

**Г.В. Шотова-Ніколенко**

**НАВЧАЛЬНИЙ ПОСІБНИК  
З ГРАМАТИКИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ**

Одеса - 2019

МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ  
ОДЕСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ ЕКОЛОГІЧНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ

**Г.В. Шотова-Ніколенко**

**НАВЧАЛЬНИЙ ПОСІБНИК  
З ГРАМАТИКИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ**

для студентів-магістрів I курсу  
I, II семестрів  
денної форми навчання  
Усі спеціальності

Одеса – 2019

МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ  
ОДЕСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ ЕКОЛОГІЧНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ

НАВЧАЛЬНИЙ ПОСІБНИК  
з граматики англійської мови  
для студентів-магістрів I курсу  
I, II семестрів  
денної форми навчання  
Усі спеціальності

“Узгоджено”  
Деканатом факультету магістерської  
та аспірантської підготовки

Одеса – 2019

**Р е ц е н з е н т и:**

зав. кафедрою іноземних мов професійного спілкування Міжнародного гуманітарного університету, доктор філологічних наук, професор **В. Я. Мізецька**; доцент кафедри українознавства та соціальних наук Одеського державного екологічного університету, кандидат філологічних наук, доцент **Троян А. О.**

**Шотова-Ніколенко Г. В.**

Навчальний посібник з граматики англійської мови. Одеський державний екологічний університет. Одеса, 2019. 192 с.

Навчальний посібник для студентів магістерського рівня підготовки присвячений головним аспектам англійської граматики, а саме: видо-часовим формам англійського дієслова в активному і пасивному стані, неособовим формам дієслова (інфінітиву, дієприкметнику, герундію), умовному способу, модальним дієсловам. Граматичний матеріал подається в стислому викладенні з відповідними схемами, оскільки передбачається його повторення, а не первинне вивчення. Зазначений граматичний матеріал подається в поєднанні з тренувальними вправами, які спрямовані на аналіз і відпрацювання, закріплення вивченого граматичного матеріалу.

© Г. В. Шотова-Ніколенко, 2019

© Одеський державний  
екологічний університет, 2019

## ЗМІСТ

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| Передмова ..... | 7 |
|-----------------|---|

### **I. Видо-часові форми англійського дієслова в активному стані та пасивному стані (The Tense Forms in the Active Voice and in the Passive Voice)**

|  |    |
|--|----|
| The Indefinite Tenses .....                | 10 |
| The Present Indefinite Tense .....         | 10 |
| The Past Indefinite Tense .....            | 15 |
| The Future Indefinite Tense .....          | 20 |
| The Continuous Tenses .....                | 24 |
| The Present Continuous Tense .....         | 24 |
| The Past Continuous Tense .....            | 28 |
| The Future Continuous Tense .....          | 32 |
| The Perfect Tenses .....                   | 35 |
| The Present Perfect Tense .....            | 35 |
| The Past Perfect Tense .....               | 41 |
| The Future Perfect Tense .....             | 44 |
| The Perfect Continuous Tenses .....        | 47 |
| The Present Perfect Continuous Tense ..... | 47 |
| The Past Perfect Continuous Tense .....    | 51 |
| The Future Perfect Continuous Tense .....  | 55 |
| The Future - in - the Past Tenses .....    | 58 |
| The Tense Forms in the Passive Voice ..... | 61 |
| Тренувальні тести .....                    | 67 |

### **II. Неособові форми дієслова (The Non-Finite Forms of the Verb)**

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Інфінітив .....  | 73 |
| Підрозділ 1.1 Функції інфінітива .....                                       | 74 |
| Підрозділ 1.2 Інфінітивні звороти .....                                      | 75 |
| The Infinitive. The Exercises .....  | 80 |
| Дієприкметник .....  | 84 |
| Підрозділ 2.1. Функції дієприкметника і дієприкметникові<br>конструкції..... | 85 |
| The Participle. The Exercises .....  | 90 |
| Герундій .....   | 94 |
| The Gerund. The Exercises .....  | 97 |

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Тренувальні тести ..... | 101 |
|-------------------------|-----|

### III. Умовний спосіб (The Subjunctive Mood)

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Способи дієслова (Moods) .....                    | 106 |
| The Conditional Mood .....                        | 106 |
| Subjunctive II .....                              | 107 |
| Вживання Conditional Mood I Subjunctive II .....  | 108 |
| Subjunctive I .....                               | 111 |
| The Suppositional Mood .....                      | 111 |
| Вживання Suppositional Mood I Subjunctive I ..... | 112 |
| Grammar Exercises .....                           | 114 |
| Conditional Sentences .....                       | 121 |
| Grammar Exercises .....                           | 124 |
| Suppositional Mood II .....                       | 132 |
| Grammar Exercises .....                           | 134 |
| Тренувальні тести .....                           | 136 |

### IV. Модальні дієслова (Modal Verbs)

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Modal Verbs .....       | 139 |
| Grammar Exercises ..... | 141 |
| Grammar Revision .....  | 147 |
| Тренувальні тести ..... | 149 |

### V. Лексико-граматичні особливості англійської мови (Lexico-Grammatical Difficulties of the English Language)

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| 1. The use of some numerals and nouns expressing number .....  | 152 |
| 2. Some pronouns followed by an of-phrase<br>( <i>some, any, anyone, none, either, neither, each</i> ) ..... | 155 |
| 3. ( <i>the</i> ) <i>other(s), another</i> .....   | 157 |
| 4. ( <i>A</i> ) <i>few, (a) little</i> .....   | 160 |
| 5. <i>Many, much</i> .....   | 163 |
| 6. The place of <i>enough</i> .....  | 165 |
| 7. <i>There is (there are)</i> in negative constructions .....   | 167 |
| 8. The verb <i>to have</i> in negative sentences .....   | 169 |
| 9. The use of the verb <i>to make</i> .....  | 171 |
| 10. <i>Yes</i> and <i>no</i> used in replies to negative questions or statements .....                       | 173 |
| 11. <i>Too</i> and <i>either</i> .....   | 174 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 12.Adjectives in the function of a predicative<br>(not to be confused with adverbs) ..... | 176 |
| 13.Personal pronouns as part of the subject .....   | 179 |
| 14.The pronoun <i>who in</i> complex sentences .....                                      | 181 |
| 15.Object clauses beginning with interrogative pronouns or adverbs .....                  | 183 |

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| <i>Supplement I</i> .....  | 185 |
| <i>Supplement II</i> ..... | 190 |
| <i>Лінепамыпа</i> .....    | 191 |

## ПЕРЕДМОВА

Запропонований навчальний посібник для студентів магістерського рівня підготовки присвячений головним аспектам англійської граматики, а саме: видо-часовим формам англійського дієслова в активному і пасивному стані, неособовим формам дієслова (інфінітиву, дієприкметнику, герундію), умовному способу, модальним дієсловам, що викликають певні труднощі у студентів під час навчання. Зазначений граматичний матеріал подається в поєднанні з тренувальними вправами, які спрямовані на аналіз та відпрацювання, закріплення вивченого граматичного матеріалу. Граматичний матеріал подається в стислому викладенні з відповідними схемами, оскільки, передбачається його повторення, а не первинне вивчення. До окремих граматичних вправ використані уривки з текстів оригінальної англійської та американської літератури (Т. Драйзер, Ч. Діккенс, Дж. Голсуорсі, С. Моем, А. Крісті, Б. Шоу, Марк Твен та ін.), що поглиблюватиме розуміння особливостей морфології англійської мови.

Мета навчального посібника — розвиток і закріплення граматичних навичок з видо-часових форм англійського дієслова, з неособових форм дієслова (інфінітива, дієприкметника, герундія), умовного способу, модальних дієслів англійської мови, систематизування знань і вмінь щодо вживання відповідних видо-часових форм в активному і пасивному станах.

Навчальний посібник складається з п'яти розділів. Кожен розділ присвячений відповідній граматичній темі: I. Видо-часові форми англійського дієслова (Indefinite, Continuous, Perfect, Perfect-Continuous, Future-in-the Past в активному стані та пасивному стані); II. Неособові форми дієслова (Infinitive, Participle, Gerund); III. Умовний спосіб (Conditional Mood); IV. Модальні дієслова (Modal Verbs); V. Лексико-граматичні особливості англійської мови.

Всі розділи складаються з попереднього пояснення граматичного матеріалу, відповідних прикладів і комплексу тренувальних вправ. Характеристика особливостей значення і вживання видо-часових форм англійського дієслова, інфінітива, дієприкметника, герундія та умовного способу, модальних дієслів супроводжується відповідними таблицями. Розроблена в навчальному посібнику система вправ забезпечує поступове засвоєння відповідних граматичних явищ, розвиває у студентів вміння самостійно орієнтуватися у мовленнєвих ситуаціях під час вживання видо-часових форм англійської мови. Наприкінці кожної частини посібника подано тести-завдання для самоконтролю набутих знань студентів з граматики англійської мови, що потребують від них індивідуальної



відповіді.

Навчальний посібник містить стислий опис, і пояснення деяких лексико-граматичних особливостей англійської мови, що викликають певні труднощі у носіїв української мови. Відбір матеріалу підказано найбільш типовими помилками в галузі слововживання і труднощами під час вживання деяких граматичних категорій англійської мови. Таким чином, навчальний посібник полегшує україномовним студентам ліквідувати та запобігти вживання ними найбільш типових помилок під час вивчення англійської мови, у процесі усного мовлення. П'ятий розділ складається з п'ятнадцяти параграфів. Кожен параграф складається з вступних вправ за заданою темою, пояснювальних приміток, тренувальних вправ. Всі параграфи, що пропонуються, є однотипними за своєю структурою і містять систематизований комплекс вправ, мета яких розвинути та покращити навички мовлення студентів. Характеристика особливостей значення і вживання англійських слів супроводжується прикладами. Для вироблення і закріплення певних граматичних та лексичних навичок у студентів наводяться різноманітні вправи, що базуються в основному на матеріалі класичної англійської і американської літератури.

Після вивчення поданого курсу студенти повинні знати і вміти:

- розуміти і правильно вживати видо-часові форми англійського дієслова як в усному, так і в писемному мовленні;
- володіти відповідним граматичним матеріалом, а саме, давати визначення всіх видо-часових форм і зіставляти їх функціонування в українській мові;
- перекладати художню та науково-технічну англомовну літературу, де наявні вивчені групи часів в активному і пасивному станах для одержання необхідної інформації;
- розуміти і володіти граматичними конструкціями та матеріалом, наданими в навчальному посібнику, а саме вміти вживати і розпізнавати неособові форми дієслова: інфінітив, дієприкметник, герундій;
- читати і перекладати художню та науково-технічну англомовну літературу, де наявні інфінітив, дієприкметник, герундій для одержання необхідної інформації;
- розуміти і правильно вживати форми умовного способу та модальних дієслів як в усному, так і в писемному мовленні;
- давати визначення видо-часовим форм умовного способу і вміти зіставляти їх функціонування в українській і в англійській мовах;
- перекладати художню та науково-технічну англомовну літературу, де наявний умовний спосіб та його видо-часові форми для розуміння

необхідної інформації;

- розуміти зміст прочитаного і лексико-граматичний матеріал, наданий у тренувальних вправах;
- розуміти і володіти відповідними граматичними конструкціями та матеріалом, уникати типових лексико-граматичних помилок;
- вільно брати участь в усному спілкуванні англійською мовою.

Скорочення, що зустрічаються у навчальному посібнику:

### Abbreviations

|                  |   |                              |
|------------------|---|------------------------------|
| etc.             | — | et cetera (і так далі)       |
| Ex.              | — | Exercise (вправа)            |
| i.e.             | — | that is (тобто)              |
| V                | — | Verb (дієслово)              |
| V <sup>1</sup>   | — | дієслово у I формі           |
| V <sup>2</sup>   | — | дієслово у II формі          |
| V <sup>3</sup>   | — | дієслово у III формі         |
| V <sub>ing</sub> | — | дієслово із закінченням –ing |

## I. ВИДО-ЧАСОВІ ФОРМИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОГО ДІЄСЛОВА

### THE TENSE FORMS IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

### ВИДО-ЧАСОВІ ФОРМИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОГО ДІЄСЛОВА В АКТИВНОМУ СТАНІ

#### *The Indefinite Tenses*

#### THE PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE

V<sup>1</sup> (V<sub>s</sub><sup>1</sup>)

I (you, we, they) write (translate)  
He (she, it) writes (translates)

|                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Do you write (translate)?   | Yes, I do.<br>No, I don't.         |
| Does she write (translate)? | Yes, she does.<br>No, she doesn't. |

I do not (don't) write (translate)  
She does not (doesn't) write (translate)

**Теперішній неозначений час** утворюється з інфінітива (неозначена форма дієслова) без частки to (to read — I, you we, they read); у третій особі однини до форми інфінітива додається закінчення s / es (to read — he, she, it reads, to wish – he, she, it wishes).

**Теперішній неозначений час** вживається для вираження регулярної, повсякденної дії, що відбувається щодня, щотижня, щомісяця, щороку в теперішньому неозначеному часі.

**Слова–показники:** always, often, seldom, sometimes, every (day, week, month, year).

### *Структура стверджувального речення*

## Іменник/ займенник + дієслово + інші частини мови

I (you, we, they) write (translate) a book.

He (she, it) writes (translates) a book.

## Структура запитального речення

Допоміжне дієслово (do/does) + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово +  
інші частини мови

|                                  |              |
|----------------------------------|--------------|
| Do you write (translate) a book? | Yes, I do.   |
|                                  | No, I don't. |

[illegible]

## Структура заперечного речення

Іменник/ займенник +допоміжне дієслово (do/does) + частка not + дієслово  
+ інші частини мови

I do not (don't) write (translate) a book.  
She does not (doesn't) write (translate) a book.

## THE EXERCISES

EX.1 ANSWER THE QUESTIONS ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model:* What does the teacher do?

— *He teaches.*

# What does an architect do?

## What does a tractor-driver do?

## What does a builder do?

## What does a type-setter do?

EX.2 ASK QUESTIONS ON THE WORDS IN BOLD TYPE:

*Model: Her parents spend much time at work.*

— *Whose parents spend much time at work?*

1. Great Britain lies in the eastern part of the Atlantic Ocean. 2. The sea surrounds the British Isles. 3. The pupils of our form go in for sport. 4. She reads many books. 5. He likes to write long letters. 6. The Severn is the longest river in Great Britain. 7. Usually I clean my room on Saturday. 8. Shakespeare's plays and poems are the monument of a remarkable genius. 9. The sun rises in the East. 10. Water freezes at zero. 11. I hear somebody's voice in the distance.

EX.3 ANSWER THE QUESTIONS:

1. Are you a pupil? 2. Are you a student? 3. How old are you? 4. What language do you study? 5. What language does your brother (sister) study? 6. Where do you learn to speak English? 7. What do you do at the English lessons? 8. How do you work at your English? 9. How often do you have English lessons? 10. How many lessons a week do you have? 11. Do you learn English poems by heart? 12. Can you speak English well? 13. Do you make many mistakes? 14. When do you take an examination in English? 15. Can you read English without the dictionary? 16. Do you like English? Why?

EX.4 MAKE THE SENTENCES NEGATIVE:

*Model: a) They live in Kyiv.*

— *They do not live in Kyiv.*

*b) She plays the piano.*

— *She does not play the piano.*

1. We study French. 2. Your sister has English lessons every day. 3. There are many mistakes in your work. 4. You get up at 10 o'clock. 5. Your friend always does something in the evening. 6. We must go there every day. 7. The girl likes to spend her free time in the yard. 8. You speak Chinese very well.

EX.5 PUT QUESTIONS TO THE MISSING PARTS OF THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES:

*Model: He plays the piano...*

— *How does he play the piano?*

1. They know .... 2. We read, translate and do exercises at .... 3. My friend speaks ... well. 4. I come home from school at.... 5. I learn my lessons .... 6. They often write letters to .... 7. They go to the Crimea ... a year. 8. We speak ... at our English lessons. 9. I don't understand him because ....

EX.6 TRANSLATE THE FOLLOWING INTO ENGLISH:

1. Моя сім'я мешкає в Одесі.
2. Звичайно ми відвідуємо наших родичів влітку.
3. Він добре говорить англійською мовою.
4. Мій брат працює на заводі, а сестра — студентка.
5. Наш сусід добре водить машину.
6. Де Олег? Чому його немає вдома? Він в бібліотеці. Він завжди ходить в бібліотеку по п'ятницях.
7. Хто твоя мати? Лікар. Вона працює у лікарні.
8. Скільки кімнат у вашій квартирі? Три.
9. Яка гора найвища в світі?
10. Дніпро — одна з найдовших річок України, чи не так?
11. Твій батько робочий?
12. Скільки тобі років?
13. Як часто ти відвідуєш свою подругу?
14. Чи буваєш ти у краєзнавчому музеї? Як часто?
15. Столицею якої країни є Лондон?
16. Якою мовою розмовляють у Новій Зеландії?
17. Які п'ять англо-мовних країн ти знаєш?
18. Які книги ти любиш читати?
19. Які книги люблять читати твої батьки?
20. Твоя сестра вчиться чи працює?

EX.7 ASK QUESTIONS AS IN THE MODEL:

*Model:*        *Ask your friend where he lives.*  
                  *— Where do you live?*  
                  *Ask your friend where his aunt lives.*  
                  *— Where does your aunt live?*

Ask your friend:

1.     when he gets up;
2.     where he has his breakfast;
3.     when he goes to school;
4.     how many lessons a day he has;
5.     where his brother (sister) study;
6.     what kind of books he likes to read;
7.     what kind of TV programmes he likes to watch;
8.     where his relatives live;
9.     when he visits his relatives;
10.    where he goes when he has free time;
11.    what he usually does in the evening;
12.    when he goes to bed.

EX.8 MAKE THE DIALOGUE COMPLETE:

- Is Saturday your day off?  
— ...  
— Do you get up early on your day off?  
— ...  
— Does it take you long?

- ...
- Then you wash and dress, don't you?
- ...
- Does your mother prepare breakfast for you?
- ...
- What do you do when the weather is fine?
- ...
- And what do you usually do when the weather is bad?
- ...
- Where do you spend your day off in winter?
- ...
- Do you have a good time there?
- ...
- Do you come home late?
- ...
- Do you watch TV or listen to the music in the evening?
- ...
- When do you go to bed?
- ...

Ex.9 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE:

1. If Shakespeare's plays are the monuments of a remarkable genius, they are also the monument of a remarkable age. (Salinger)
2. "So, it all passes", he was thinking; "passes and begins again". (Galsworthy)
3. Phuong's in the milkbar... She always goes there. At eleven thirty. (Greene)
4. "I suppose the doctor comes?" — "Every morning". (Galsworthy)
5. When we go to the bridge, it will be by another way. (Hemingway)
6. "Edward", said Miss Murdstone, "let there be an end of this. I go tomorrow." (Dickens)
7. "You do not leave tomorrow, sir?" (Meredith)
8. "That's the way she always talks" (Twain)
9. "I'm so careless. I always leave my bag about." (Maugham)
10. "He takes such care of me, besides!" said Barnaby. "Such care, mother! He watches all the time I sleep; and when I shut my eyes and make believe to slumber, he practises new learning softly; but he keeps his eye on me the while, and if he sees me laugh, though never so little, stops directly..." (Dickens)
11. "Strange! for she doesn't often fail to put in an appearance at meal-times". (S.K. Hocking)

## THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE

V<sup>2</sup>

I (you, she, he, it, we, they) wrote (translated)

Did you write (translate)?    Yes, I did.  
   No, I didn't.

I did not (didn't) write (translate)

**Минулий неозначений час** стандартних (правильних) дієслів утворюється шляхом додавання до інфінітива дієслова без частки to закінчення –ed, а нестандартних дієслів шляхом змінювання кореневої голосної або приголосної: to begin-began, to make-made або іншими способами.

**Минулий неозначений час** вживається для вираження регулярної, повсякденної дії, що відбувалася вчора, на минулому тижні, минулого місяця, минулого року або виражає ряд послідовних дій, що відбувалися у минулому часі.

**Слова-показники:** yesterday, the day before yesterday, last (day, week, month, year).

### **Структура стверджувального речення**

Іменник/ займенник + дієслово у другій формі+інші частини мови

I (you, we, they) wrote (translated) a book.  
He (she, it) wrote (translated) a book.

### **Структура запитального речення**

Допоміжне дієслово (did)+іменник/займенник + основне дієслово+ інші частини мови

Did you write (translate) a book?    Yes, I did  
   No, I didn't.



Yes, she did  
No, she didn't.

## Структура заперечного речення

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово did + частка not + дієслово +  
інші частини мови

I, you, we, they, he, she, it (did not (didn't) write (translate) a book.

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 FORM THE PAST INDEFINITE OF THE FOLLOWING VERBS:

|       |       |       |        |           |         |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|-----------|---------|
| Jump  | sing  | enjoy | cook   | read      | prepare |
| Take  | carry | hurry | clear  | go        | make    |
| Sit   | look  | shout | write  | swim      | have    |
| Wash  | spend | lead  | repair | translate | wear    |
| Catch | lend  | take  | give   | find      | do      |

Ex. 2 CHANGE THE PRESENT INDEFINITE INTO THE PAST INDEFINITE:

1. My friend lives in Kiev. 2. I like to spend much time in the open air. 3. I don't know her new address. 4. Does your brother speak English? 5. Do you often go to the theatre? 6. I often visit my grandparents. 7. His relatives live in America. 8. The pupils write dictations twice a week. 9. The librarian gives us interesting books and magazines. 10. Many tourists come to our town in summer. 11. My elder sister is a student. 12. He does his homework after dinner.

Ex. 3 MAKE THE FOLLOWING INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE:

1. The teacher explained a new rule. 2. Yesterday we wrote a dictation. 3. The children spent the whole day in the park. 4. We reached the village before dark. 5. The student passed the examination successfully. 6. The pupils of our form went to the museum last week. 7. I lived in the Crimea last year. 8. We did the work in time. 9. She told us the truth. 10. I could speak and write English perfectly. 11. My friend learned Shakespeare's poem by heart. 12. We worked in the garden two days ago. 13. He was my best friend. 14. There were flowers in her hand.

Ex. 4 ANSWER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

1. Where were you yesterday? 2. What did you do last Sunday? 3. When were you at the cinema last time? 4. When and where were you born? 5. What did you do in the morning yesterday? 6. Where did you go after dinner yesterday? 7. Did you write a composition at the last English lesson? 8. Did you learn new grammar rules at the last English lesson? 9. Did you get a good or bad mark yesterday?

Ex. 5 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Вчора я прийшов пізно зі школи. 2. Минулого тижня учні нашого класу їздили на екскурсію у Львів. 3. Цей письменник написав багато цікавих пригодницьких історій. 4. Що ви робили на уроці з англійської мови вчора? Ми писали диктант, перекладали новий текст і описували картину. 5. Наша команда виграла гру на минулому тижні. 6. Що ти робив увечері вчора?

Я допомагав мамі по господарству. 7. Ми їздили у Крим під час зимових канікул. 8. Вчора мій друг купив декілька нових марок для своєї колекції.

9. Студенти закінчили експеримент вчасно. 10. Я почав вивчати англійську мову три роки тому. 11. Ми склали іспит, з історії минулого тижня.

Ex. 6 MAKE THE DIALOGUE COMPLETE:

— When did your working day begin yesterday?

— ...

— When did you get up?

— ...

— Did your mother wake you up?

— ...

— Did you make your bed?

— ...

— What did you do then?

— ...

— What did you have for breakfast?

— ...

— When did you leave home?

— ...

— Did you go to school on foot or by bus?

— ...

— When did your school begin?

— ...

— How many lessons did you have yesterday?

- ...
- What marks did you get yesterday?
- ...
- What did you do when your classes were over?
- ...
- When did you come home?
- ...
- Did you go for a walk after dinner?
- ...
- What did you do in the evening?
- ...
- When did you go to bed?
- ...

Ex. 7 PUT QUESTIONS TO THE UNDERLINED WORDS:

1. George Meredith was born in 1828 and died in 1909.
2. When a boy, Rudyard Kipling lived in India.
3. Robert Burns' father worked hard to make both ends meet.
4. Richardson wrote his novels in the form of a series of letters.
5. Shelly and Byron met in Switzerland in 1816.
6. Keats devoted his life entirely and passionately to poetry alone.
7. Daniel Defoe published his famous book "Robinson Crusoe" when an elderly man.

Ex. 8 TASKS:

*Model: Your mother told you to open the window, dust the things in the room and wash the floor. Say what you did.*

— *I opened the window, dusted the things in the room and washed the floor.*

1. You promised to go to the kindergarten, take your little sister (brother) out, walk with her (him) in the park and bring her (him) home. Say what you did.
2. Our teacher asked us to learn a poem by heart, read the text of Lesson 2 and do Exercise 27. Say what we did.
3. I asked my friend to take the prescription, go to the chemist's, get the medicine and give it to my sick sister. Say what he (she) did.
4. Your teacher told you to go to the library, take some books on Ukrainian history and prepare a report about the Great Patriotic War. Say what you did.

Ex. 9 ANSWER THE QUESTIONS:

1. You watched the TV program yesterday, didn't you?
2. What did you have for breakfast?

3. How many pupils took part in your last sport competition?
4. Where did you live 5 years ago?
5. What did you have on yesterday?
6. Who of your friends went to Sochi to rest last summer?
7. How many lessons did you have last Wednesday?

Ex.10 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN. COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE:

1. Lord Goring, "My father told me to go to bed an hour ago." (Wilde)
2. They crossed the level at a sharp pace and began mounting the rise. (Galsworthy)
3. Every evening the fisherman went out upon the sea and threw his nets into the water. (Wilde)
4. By April Fools' Day the plum blossom was fully out in all the orchards along the vale. (Moore)
5. The music stopped and Pyle bowed stiffly to Phuong, then led her back and drew out her chair. (Greene)
6. He flung his fists up in the air, cried out, "I won't be mad!" and rolled over on his face. (Galsworthy)
7. While she stood hesitating, the door opened, and an old man came forth shading a candle with one hand. (Hardy)
8. "When did you last see Pyle?"... "When he came here", she said. (Greene)
9. Her lips were soft, trembling. But her eyes smiled. (Cronin)
10. When I stood up the two soldiers stopped eating. (Greene)
11. That night, at seven o'clock, they set out through the brisk and busy streets for Doctor Llewellyn's house. (Cronin)
12. She remembered how that night when the missionary took her hand in his to say good-night, his touch seemed to thrill her to the depths of her being. (S. K. Hocking)
13. "... But Heaven help me now, for I never realized till this moment how much I loved her." (S. K. Hocking)

## THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE

shall  
will + V<sup>1</sup>

|   |
|---|
| <p>I (we) shall write (translate)</p> <p>You (she, he, it, they) will write (translate)</p> |
|---|

|                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Will you write (translate)? | Yes, I shall<br>No, I shan't |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|

|   |
|---|
| <p>I shall not (shan't) write (translate)</p> <p>You will not (won't) write (translate)</p> |
|---|

**Майбутній неозначений час** виражає однаразову дію або стан, багаторазову дію або ряд послідовних дій, що будуть відбуватися завтра, майбутнього тижня, місяця, року, тобто у майбутньому часі.

**Майбутній неозначений час** утворюється за допомогою допоміжних дієслів shall для (I, we) will (you, they, he, she, it) та інфінітива основного дієслова без частки to.

**Слова-показники:** tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next (day, week, month, year).

### *Структура стверджувального речення*

Іменник/ займенник +shall, will + дієслово +інші частини мови

I (we) shall write (translate) a book.  
You (she, he, it, they) will write (translate) a book.

### Структура запитального речения

Допоміжне дієслово (shall, will )+іменник/займенник + основне дієслово +  
інші частини мови

|                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Will you write (translate) a book? | Yes, I shall. |
|                                    | No, I shan't. |

Will he, she (they) write (translate) a book?      Yes, he, she (they) will.  
No, he, she (they) won't.

### *Структура заперечного речення*

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово shall, will + частка not  
+ дієслово + інші частини мови

I, we shall not (shan't) write (translate) a book.  
You (he, she) will not (won't) write (translate) a book.

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 CHANGE THE FOLLOWING INTO THE FUTURE INDEFINITE:

*Model:* I visit my grandparents on Sunday.  
— I shall visit my grandparents on Sunday.  
She cleaned the flat in the evening.  
— She will clean the flat in the evening.

1. I go to the theatre on Sunday. 2. My father works at a big plant. 3. We left for the North in autumn. 4. She spent much time in the library. 5. I help my parents in the afternoon. 6. We began the work in time. 7. My cousin helped me much with this article's translation. 8. The pupils wrote a composition at the last English lesson. 9. I plant a lot of flowers in spring. 10. She visits her aunt on Saturday.

Ex. 2 MAKE THE FOLLOWING INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE:

*Model:*      *They will plant a lot of trees in spring.*  
                   — *Will they plant a lot of trees in spring?*  
                   — *They won't plant a lot of trees in spring.*

1. We shall meet them at the railway station. 2. She will give you a good advice. 3. They will go to Poland next month. 4. My brother will be on leave in May. 5. He will go to the post-office to wire to his mother. 6. Tomorrow they will be far from here. 7. I shall give her a valuable present. 8. It will rain hard in the afternoon. 9. You will see a beautiful park near the lake. 10. I shall be glad to see you again.

Ex. 3 ANSWER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

1. At what time will you get up tomorrow?
2. When will you go to school?
3. How many lessons will you have tomorrow?
4. What will you do after dinner?
5. When will you have dinner?
6. What will you do after dinner?
7. Will you help your mother about the house in the afternoon?
8. What will you do in the evening?
9. When will you go to bed?

Ex. 4 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE INDEFINITE AND THE PRESENT INDEFINITE AFTER IF AND WHEN IN THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES. TRANSLATE THE SENTENCES INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. When will he come home?
2. I shall be very glad if he comes soon.
3. If he comes home early, we shall go to the cinema.
4. I don't know when he will come home.
5. I want to know if he will come home early today.
6. I am interested to know when he will do it.
7. When will he do it?
8. If she does her work well, everybody will praise her.
9. When she finishes her work, she will have a good rest.
10. I don't know if she will do her work in time.
11. If you learn about it, tell me at once.
12. When will you learn about it?

Ex. 5 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Ми підемо на концерт сьогодні ввечері.
2. Наступного тижня наша футбольна команда братиме участь у міських змаганнях.
3. Я прийду сюди за годину.
4. Моя сестра закінчить інститут наступного року.
5. Де ти проведеш зимові канікули?
6. Я подзвоню тобі, якщо матиму час.
7. Наступного місяця мій брат отримає паспорт.
8. Ми писатимемо твір на наступному уроці англійської мови.
9. Після обіду я пограю на піаніно.
10. Багато туристів відвідає наше місто влітку.
11. Після закінчення школи я працюватиму на текстильній фабриці.
12. Декілька концертів цього відомого співака відбудеться наступного місяця у Києві.

Ex. 6 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN. COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE:

1. "If you eat, I shall eat with you; if you don't, neither shall I." (Stevenson)
2. "I'll give you the address of someone who will help you when you get to Cape Town." (Abrahams)
3. We'll leave the minute you're ready.
4. "We'll take a holiday when we sell out here." (Cronin)
5. "How will you get on without a team?" Roy said unhappily. "I won't get on unless you give me a hand." (Aldridge)
6. "Alice has unpacked for you and will look after you until your maid arrives," said Mrs. Danvers. (Du Maurier)
7. "I'll come when you have no one else." (Eliot)
8. "I shall leave it to the boatswain to do that when you're in the navy," said Clara. (Meredith)
9. "I'll see you before I go, Pyle." (Greene)
10. "He won't surprise me till he's perfect." (Dickens)
11. "You shall see him, mother, bound hand and foot, and brought to London at a saddle-girth; and you shall hear of him at Tyburn Tree if we have luck." (Dickens)
12. "Then I think I had better put off overhauling you until tomorrow, for you will be better in bed today," and the doctor laughed. (S. K. Hocking)
13. "Some day you will love someone who is free to love you in return," she answered, and the tears trembled on her eyelashes. (S. K. Hocking)
14. "I shall never love anyone but you," he said resolutely; "but enough of this." (S. K. Hocking)
15. "He will be curious to see if I am charged... I hope he will not be disappointed in me." (S. K. Hocking)
16. "... Oh, I hope you will soon forget me ..." "I will try my best," he interposed quickly. (S. K. Hocking)
17. "... In time, no doubt, my heart will heal, and I shall be able to look back to this day without bitterness." (S. K. Hocking)
18. "You are his little pet, you are his favourite: he'll do anything for you." (Dickens)
19. "I'll come directly." "I'll wait for you," said Tom, "to make sure." (Dickens)
20. "You will stay with us until the wedding, my dear," Mrs. Smutts whispered to Winifred. (S. K. Hocking)



## *The Continuous Tenses*

### THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

|     |                   |
|-----|-------------------|
| am  |                   |
| is  | +V <sub>ing</sub> |
| are |                   |

|   |
|---|
| I am writing (translating)<br>You (we, they) are writing (translating)<br>He (she, it) is writing (translating) |
|---|

|                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Are you writing (translating)? | Yes, I am.<br>No, I am not. |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|

|  |
|--|
| You are not (aren't) writing (translating)<br>She is not (isn't) writing (translating) |
|--|

**Теперішній продовжений (тривалий)** час вживається для вираження процесу дії, в її розвитку, що відбувається в дану хвилину, момент, який може виражатись контекстом, ситуацією або прислівником now (зараз).

**Слова-показники:** at this moment, now.

#### **Структура стверджувального речення**

Іменник/ займенник + to be (am, are, is) + основне дієслово із закінченням –ing + інші частини мови

I am writing (translating) a book.  
You (we, they) are writing (translating) a book.  
He (she, it) is writing (translating) a book.

### Структура запитального речения

Допоміжне дієслово to be (am, are, is) + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово із закінченням -ing + інші частини мови

[illegible][illegible]

## Структура заперечного речення

Іменник / займенник + дієслово to be (am, are, is) + частка not +  
+ основне дієслово із закінченням - ing +інші частини мови

I, you, we, they are not (aren't) writing (translating) a book.  
She, he is not (isn't) writing (translating) a book.

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 MAKE THE FOLLOWING INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE:

*Model:*        *The children are watching TV.*  
                   — *Are the children watching TV?*  
                   — *What are the children doing?*  
                   — *The children are not watching TV.*

1. She is playing the piano. 2. I am repeating my homework. 3. The dog is barking. 4. The mother is cooking dinner. 5. He is working in the kitchen-garden. 6. We are skating. 7. The sun is shining brightly. 8. It is raining hard.

Ex. 2 REPLACE THE INFINITIVE IN BRACKETS BY THE PRESENT INDEFINITE OR THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS:

1. Usually we (to pass) our examinations in June. 2. Where is Ania? She is in the library. She (to prepare) her report for tomorrow. 3. As a rule I (to come) to school at 8 o'clock. 4. My friend always (to help) her mother in the kitchen. 5. The pupils of our form (to take part) in the sport competition once a month. 6. She (to visit) me from time to time. 7. Look! The bus (to come) up. 8. When will you come? I (to be going) down on Friday. 9. Where are the children? They are in the yard. They (to play) ball there. 10. Why she (to cry)? 11. Where you

(to go)? 12. I often (to spend) my day off in the village where my old granny (to live).

Ex. 3 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Що робить черговий учень? Він прибирає клас. Зараз він поливає квіти.
2. Куди ти йдеш? Я йду в театр. Я завжди ходжу в театр у неділю.
4. Оксана — в бібліотеці. Вона готується до екзамену з англійської мови.
5. Подивись. Іде сильний дощ. Тобі треба взяти парасольку.
6. Тихо. Іде екзамен. Наш клас складає іспит з історії України.
7. Мій друг збирається стати архітектором.
8. Олег вдома? Ні. Він бере участь у спортивних змаганнях. Він дуже любить спорт.
9. Батько зараз ремонтує велосипед, а мати готує вечерю.
10. Послухай! Яка чудова музика звучить по радіо! Я часто слухаю музичні програми ввечері.

Ex. 4 MAKE UP YOUR OWN SENTENCES WITH THE GIVEN WORD COMBINATIONS:

|                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| is going to      | is examining      |
| are listening to | are preparing for |
| am playing       | am consulting     |
| is speaking with | is watching       |
| are walking      | is giving         |
| is swimming      | am giving         |
| are learning     | are drawing       |
| is looking for   | am looking up     |
| am speaking over | is not feeling    |
| is expecting     | are talking       |

Ex. 5 ANSWER THE QUESTIONS:

1. Are you answering the teacher's questions?
2. Is your sister sleeping?
3. Is your mother preparing dinner?
4. Are you playing the piano?
5. Are your friends playing chess?
6. Is your father looking through the newspapers?
7. Is the dog barking in the yard?
8. Are you doing your homework?
9. Is the sun shining in the sky?
10. Are you listening to the radio?
11. Are you sweeping the floor?
12. What are you doing?

Ex. 6 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE:

1. "Are you enjoying the show?" I asked Susan. (Braine)
2. "I'm thinking about Maxim all the time," I said. (Du Maurier)
3. "Go on, Frank," he said, "What are you waiting for?" (Du Maurier)
4. "What?" he said. "I'm getting very deaf. I suppose I don't hear people ..." (Galsworthy)
5. "Young Mako and Lanny Swartz are coming here tonight," said Isaac. (Abrahams)
6. "Miss Dale is looking well," he said. (Meredith)
7. "I am asking Sissy a few questions, Tom," observed his sister ... "Don't interrupt us for a moment, Tom, dear." (Dickens)
8. "Surely you might give me a word of hope," he pleaded; "I am willing to wait — months — or years — if you wish it." (S. K. Hocking)
9. "And then somehow I am beginning to dread that long journey up the country." (S. K. Hocking)
10. "You are not overlooking the possibility that the husband was deliberately got out of the way — by someone who wanted to murder Mrs. Spenlow?" "You are thinking of young Ted Gerard, aren't you, sir?" (A. Christie)
11. "...What I am trying to say (I always express myself so badly) is this ..." (A. Christie)
12. "Mr. Vole," said the solicitor, "I'm going to ask you a very serious question, ..." (A. Christie)
13. "I suppose they pity me because I am travelling alone." (S. K. Hocking)
14. "What are the restless wretches doing now?" asked Mrs. Sparsit. (Dickens)
15. "What can I do, child? Ask me what you will." "I am coming to it ..." (Dickens)
16. "I have all I wish, and I am growing elderly" replied the man. (Stevenson)
17. "You are not deceiving me?" said Keawe. (Stevenson)
18. "Mate, I wonder, are you making a fool of me?" asked the boatswain. (Stevenson)
19. "Someone is hoaxing us," cried Dr. Tosswill, rising indignantly to his feet. (A. Christie)
20. "Very well, Kanaka," says the boatswain, "I will try; but if you are having your fun out of me, I will take my fun out of you with a belaying-pin." (Stevenson)
21. "...We are just discussing whether to grow vegetable marrows or potatoes." (A. Christie)

## THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

|                     |
|---------------------|
| was<br>were + V ing |
|---------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I (he, she, it) was writing (translating)<br>You (we, they) were writing (translating) |
|--|

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Were you writing (translating)? | Yes, I was.<br>No, I wasn't. |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I was not (wasn't) writing (translating)<br>You were not (weren't) writing (translating) |
|--|

**Минулий продовжений (тривалий) час** вказує на процес дії, що відбувався, тривав в певну хвилину, момент у минулому часі.  
**Слова-показники:** at that time, at ... (5) o'clock yesterday.

### **Структура стверджувального речення**

Іменник / займенник + to be ( was,were) + основне дієслово із закінченням –ing + інші частини мови

I was writing (translating) a book.  
You (we, they) were writing (translating) a book.  
He (she, it) was writing (translating) a book.

### **Структура запитального речення**

Допоміжне дієслово to be (was, were) + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово із закінченням –ing + інші частини мови

Were you (we, they) writing (translating) a book?      Yes, I was.  
No, I was not.

Is he (she) writing (translating) a book?      Yes, he (she) was.  
No, he (she) was not.

### *Структура заперечного речення*

Іменник / займенник + дієслово to be ( was, were) + частка not +  
+ основне дієслово із закінченням - ing + інші частини мови

I, you, we, they were not (weren't) writing (translating) a book.  
She, he was not (wasn't) writing (translating) a book.

### **THE EXERCISES**

Ex. 1 MAKE THE FOLLOWING INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE:

1. It was raining hard. 2. I was playing the violin when she came in. 3. She was writing a report in the library at that time. 4. The doctor was examining the patients at 10 o'clock. 5. Their daughter was going to be a nurse. 6. They were talking about that day's weather. 7. We were preparing for the English examination the whole day. 8. My brother was speaking over the telephone when I came in. 9. The mother was knitting a pullover when her little son broke a new cup.

Ex. 2 GIVE ANSWERS TO THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

1. Were you having tea when your parents came home from work?

Were you doing your homework when they came home?

What were you doing when your parents came home from work?

2. Was your father reading a newspaper when your friend rang you up?

Was your father having dinner when your friend rang you up?

What was your father doing when your friend rang you up?

3. Were you going to school when your school-mate met you in the street yesterday?

Were you going to the library when your school-mate met you in the street yesterday?

Where were you going when your school-mate met you in the street yesterday?

Ex. 3 MAKE UP SENTENCES USING THE WORDS FROM THE TABLE:

|              |                             |                                    |
|--------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I            | were listening to the music | at 3 o'clock.                      |
| The children | was reading a book          | at that time.                      |
| The mother   | was cooking dinner          | when somebody knocked at the door. |
| The teacher  | were passing the exam       | the whole day yesterday.           |

|              |                           |                                   |
|--------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| The students | was watching TV           | at 11 o'clock.                    |
| My friend    | were doing the room       | when she came in.                 |
| His parents  | was explaining a new rule | when I looked through the window. |
| It           | was raining               | at this time on Sunday.           |

Ex. 4 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Був ранок. Мама готувала сніданок, а тато читав газету. 2. Коли я прийшов додому, брат готував доповідь до уроку з історії. 3. Учні складали екзамен з англійської мови об 11 годині ранку. 4. Вчора цілий день йшов сніг. 5. В той час, як я готував вечерю, моя маленька сестричка грала на піаніно. 6. Що ти робив о п'ятій годині вечора? Я садив квіти позаду будинку. 7. Коли мати подзвонила додому, Катя поливала квіти. 8. Що робив професор о дванадцятій годині ранку? Він проводив консультацію для хворих. 9. Коли я вийшов з будинку, йшов сильний дощ.

EX. 5 RESPOND TO THE QUESTIONS ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model: What was Mary doing when the phone rang? (to watch TV)*

*Mary was watching TV when the phone rang.*

1. What was Ann doing when her parents came from work? (to prepare dinner).  
 2. What was Pete doing when his friend came to him? (to do homework).  
 3. What were Kate and Nick doing when the teacher came into the classroom? (to water the flowers). 4. What was the girl doing when you saw her in the street? (to look through a newspaper). 5. What were the children doing when their mother came home? (to play in the yard). 6. What was Mr. White doing at 7 o'clock yesterday? (to have breakfast). 7. What was your teacher doing when you came to school yesterday? (to check up tests).

Ex. 6 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN. COMMENT ON THE USE OF PAST CONTINUOUS:

1. My mother was sitting by the fire that bright, windy March afternoon, very timid and sad. (Dickens)  
 2. She was weeping now...; her whole body trembling. (Bennett)  
 3. The weeks were passing, his money was going, and there was no money coming in. (London)  
 4. Some were working short hours, some were turning off hands, and for weeks Barton was out of work, living on credit. (Gaskell)  
 5. Through the open door came the low voice of his father. The old man was singing. (Abrahams)  
 6. All the time she was talking she was patting my arm reassuringly. (Walsh)

7. Phuong was drinking a glass of orange juice and I was having a beer and we sat in silence, content to be together. (Greene)
8. Old Stephen was standing in the street, ... (Dickens)
9. They were now in the black by-road near the place, and the Hands were crowding in. The bell was ringing, and the Serpent was a Serpent of many coils, and the Elephant was getting ready. (Dickens)
10. The wonder was, it was there at all. It (the town) had been ruined so often, that it was amazing how it had borne so many shocks. (Dickens)
11. All the while Keawe was eating, and talking and planning the time of their return, and thanking her for saving him, and fondling her, and calling her the true helper after all. (Stevenson)
12. I was attempting to discuss with him the sensational news of that day... (A. Christie)
13. "I was thinking," said Mr. Spenlow with something like eagerness, "that I might, perhaps, have a pergola on the west side of the cottage. (A. Christie)
14. "And of course people do think that Mrs. Spenlow was wearing was rather peculiar." (A. Christie)
15. Inspector Slack was puzzled by the intent way she was looking at him. (A. Christie)
16. It was getting towards evening when she came face to face with him at the foot of the companionway. (S. K. Hocking)
17. "Mrs. Spenlow, you see, was already suffering from conscience and was inclined to be emotionally religious." (A. Christie)
18. She was not going out to make her fortune. (S. K. Hocking)
19. And soon she was laughing when he told her about some of the funny things he had seen in Cape Town. (Abrahams)
20. By this time, quite a small crowd had collected, and people were asking each other what was the matter. (Jerome K. Jerome)
21. The sea-air and the sun had browned already the face of Athelny's children. Mrs. Athelny was frying bacon and at the same time keeping an eye on the younger children... (Mauhgam)
22. When she was lost to his view, he pursued his homeward way, glancing up sometimes at the sky, where the clouds were sailing fast and wildly. (Dickens)



## THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

|                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| shall be<br>will be | + V <sub>ing</sub> |
|---------------------|--------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I (we) shall be writing (translating)<br>You (he, she, it, they) will be writing (translating) |
|--|

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Will you be writing (translating)? | Yes, I shall.<br>No, I shan't. |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I shall not (shan't) be writing (translating)<br>You will not (won't) be writing (translating) |
|--|

**Майбутній (продовжений) тривалий** час вживається для вираження **процесу дії**, що відбуватиметься в певний момент або період часу в майбутньому часі.

**Слова-показники:** at . . . ( 5) o'clock tomorrow, at this time tomorrow.

### *Структура стверджувального речення*

Іменник/ займенник + shall, will + be + основне дієслово із закінченням – ing + інші частини мови

I (we) shall be writing (translating) a book.  
You (he, she, it, they) will be writing (translating) a book.

### *Структура запитального речення*

Дієслово to be (was, were) + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово із закінченням –ing + інші частини мови

Will you be writing (translating) a book?      Yes, I shall.  
No, I shan't.

### *Структура заперечного речення*

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово shall be, will be + частка not +  
+ основне дієслово із закінченням - ing + інші частини мови

I shall not (shan't) be writing (translating) a book.  
You will not (won't) be writing (translating) a book.

### **THE EXERCISES**

Ex. 1 MAKE THE FOLLOWING INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE:

1. We shall be passing our English examination at this time tomorrow. 2. She will be preparing dinner at 3 o'clock. 3. I'll be cleaning my room when you come. 4. He'll be taking a walk in the park at 10 o'clock. 5. They will be flying to America at this time on Saturday. 6. I'll be skating the whole day tomorrow.

Ex. 2 PUT QUESTIONS TO THE WORDS IN BOLD TYPE:

1. We shall be working hard this time tomorrow.
2. She will be taking a music lesson at 10 o'clock on Sunday.
3. They will be building a new club when you are in the country in summer.
4. The boys will be playing football when you come home.
5. He will be skiing at 5 o'clock tomorrow.

Ex. 3 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Я складатиму екзамен з фізики о п'ятнадцятій годині завтра. 2. Ми будемо саджати квіти в саду, коли ти прийдеш. 3. Студенти будуть працювати на комп'ютерах у цей час у п'ятницю. 4. Вони будуть обговорювати проблему збереження природи в області об 11-й годині ранку. 5. Я буду снідати, коли ти прийдеш. 6. Що ти будеш робити завтра в цей час? Буду готуватися до концерту. 7. У неї буде урок співу о 10-й годині в суботу. 8. Ми будемо вчитись вишивати, коли ти завітаєш до нас. 9. Я буду писати твір, коли ти подзвониш мені.

Ex. 4 TRANSFORM THE SENTENCES ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model:*        a) Are you going to clean the flat?

                  — Will you be cleaning the flat?

1. Are you going to stay in Kyiv for a month?
2. Are you going to have vegetables for supper?

3. When are they going back to the University?
4. Is she going to visit you once more?
5. What are they going to do in the evening?

*Model:        b) You will call him up in a week.*

*— Will you be calling him up in a week?*

1. She will write to her grandmother tomorrow. 2. The mother is going to take her son to the circus. 4. The man will read these magazines. 5. They are going to have dinner.

Ex. 5 ANSWER THE QUESTIONS:

1. What will you be doing at 10 a.m. tomorrow?
2. What will your mother be doing at this time on Sunday?
3. What will your friend be doing when you come to him tomorrow?
4. What will your little sister (brother) be doing when your parents come home from work?
5. What will you be doing when the teacher comes into the classroom?

Ex. 6 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE.  
TRANSLATE THE SENTENCES INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. "There is one thing to be said of it," Louisa repeated in her former curious tone: "it will be getting away from home. Yes." "Not, but what I shall be very unwilling, both to leave you, Loo, and to leave you here." (Dickens)
2. "... I shall be worrying myself, morning, noon, and night to know what I am to call him!" (Dickens)
3. "I feel I shall be asking you the same question tomorrow." (Dreiser)
4. "But me dear Ann Veronica, you will be getting into debt." (Wells)
5. "Pearl, be quick and go. Minnie will be wondering why you don't come." (Maugham)
6. "I am not going to play at all, I must see to the tea, and I dare say some more people will be coming in presently." (Maugham)
7. "Well, so long, anyway, Gretta," Royd called to her. He waved his hand in her direction. "I'll be seeing you again, too. Maybe I'll be seeing you at the Round-about some night soon." (Caldwell)
8. "I shall be having a quiet day with Antonia." (Murdoch)
9. "We'll be leaving for the North tomorrow." (London)

## *The Perfect Tenses*

### THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

|      |                  |
|------|------------------|
| have | + V <sup>3</sup> |
| Has  |                  |

|  |
|--|
| I (you, we, they) have written (translated)<br>He (she, it) has written (translated) |
|--|

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Have you written (translated)? | Yes, I have.<br>No, I haven't. |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|

|                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Has she written (translated)? | Yes, she has.<br>No, she hasn't. |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I have not (haven't) written (translated)<br>She has not (hasn't) written (translated) |
|--|

**Теперешній завершений час** вживається для вираження дії, яка вказує на **результат**, який відбувся/завершився у минулому, що має зв'язок з теперешнім часом.

**Слова-показники:** today, this week, this month, this year, this morning, just, already, not yet, ever, never.

#### **Структура стверджувального речення**

Іменник/ займенник + допоміжне дієслово (has, have) + основне дієслово у

**III формі** / або із закінченням – **ed** + інші частини мови

I (you, we, they) have written (translated) a book.  
He (she, it) has written (translated) a book.

#### **Структура запитального речення**

Допоміжне дієслово (has, have) + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово у

**III формі** / або із закінченням – **ed** + інші частини мови

Have you written (translated) a book?      Yes, I have.  
No, I haven't.

Has she written (translated) a book?      Yes, she has.  
No, she hasn't.

### *Структура заперечного речення*

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово (has, have) + частка not + основне дієслово у **III формі** / або із закінченням – **ed** + інші частини мови

I have not (haven't) written (translated) a book.  
She has not (hasn't) written (translated) a book.

## **THE EXERCISES**

Ex. 1 MAKE THE FOLLOWING INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE:

1. She has done the work. 2. The postman has brought us two letters from our relatives. 3. I have just washed the dishes. 4. We have written a long dictation. 5. Ann has left the house. 6. The children have cleaned the room. 7. I have shown him my collection of stamps. 8. The teacher has opened the window to air the room.

EX. 2 INSERT THE PRESENT INDEFINITE OR THE PRESENT PERFECT:

1. When I ... with real poetry, I cannot rest till I ... it by heart, (to meet, to learn). 2. She ... just... from Canada, (to return). 3. You ever ... to Kyiv? (to be). 4. I often ... my granny in summer, (to visit). 5. You ... this film? (to see). 6. She always... to me on Sunday. (to come). 7. We ... him since March. (not to see).

EX. 3 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. Misha says he has received a letter from his brother.  
2. He says they have brought a parcel from his parents.  
3. I am sure she has not read this article.  
4. He says they have not yet given him her address.  
5. I say I have just talked to him over the telephone.  
6. My friend says he has never been there.  
7. She says she has just had a telephone call from home.

Ex. 4 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Ти вже помив посуд? Так. 2. Нарешті я зробив переклад цього важкого тексту. 3. Я не можу прийти до тебе. Я ще не зробив уроки. 4. Чому ніхто не прибрав аудиторію? 5. Поштар тільки що приніс газети. 6. Ти отримав мою телеграму? 7. Я ніколи не був за кордоном. 8. Ти читав фантастичні оповідання Гамільтона? 9. Подивись. Вона розбила твою улюблену чашку.

Ex. 5 MAKE UP SENTENCES USING THE FOLLOWING WORD COMBINATIONS:

*Model: has finished — She has finished the work.*

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| has told     | have drawn  |
| have written | has cooked  |
| have left    | has taken   |
| have given   | have had    |
| has sent     | has arrived |

Ex. 6 ASK QUESTIONS AS IN THE MODEL:

*Model: Ask me:  
if I have read this book.  
— Have you read this book?*

Ask me:  
if I have ever been to Warsaw;  
if I have ever played the violin;  
where I have lost my bag;  
if I have done my homework;  
if I have seen this film;  
if I have read many books by Defoe;  
how many poems I have learnt by heart;  
if I have bought a present for your birthday.

Ex. 7 RESPOND TO THESE REQUESTS ACCORDING TO THE MODELS:

*Model: a) Would you open the window, please?  
— I've just opened it.*

1. Would you write the letter, please? 2. Would you clean the room, please?  
3. Would you ring Mary up, please? 4. Would you help your brother with his homework, please?

*Model: b) Is Ann going to prepare dinner now?  
— She's already prepared it.*

1. Are you going to have a talk with your teacher? 2. Is your friend going to enter the Institute? 3. Is your brother going to pass the exam in English? 4. Are you going to help your mother about the house?

*Model:*        *c) I read this interesting book yesterday.*  
                    *— I've read it too.*

1. I wrote some exercises this morning. 2. I finished the work an hour ago. 3. I asked my friend to help me yesterday. 4. I bought new stamps for my collection.

*Model:*        *d) I haven't finished my work yet. Have you?*  
                    *— No, I haven't finished it either. (No, I haven't either).*

1. The mother hasn't prepared breakfast yet. Have you? 2. I haven't done my homework yet. Have you? 3. Ann hasn't been to Kyiv yet. Has your friend? 4. She hasn't learned this poem by heart yet. Have you?

EX. 8 OPEN THE BRACKETS AND PUT THE VERBS IN THE PRESENT PERFECT OR PAST INDEFINITE TENSE:

1. "Where's Ann?" "She (to prepare supper) just. 2. "How long you (to live) in this house?" 3. "You ever (to have any trouble with) Spanish?" "No, I never (to have any trouble with) it. 4. She (to do) a lot of things yesterday. 5. I (to be) in Kyiv this month. 6. The children (to make) much noise in the room two hours ago. 7. She (to write) the test already. 8. My mother (to clean) the flat today. 9. The student (to pass) the examinations last week.

Ex. 9 INSERT THE PAST CONTINUOUS, THE PAST INDEFINITE OR THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE INSTEAD OF THE INFINITIVE:

1. He (to be) abroad all this time. 2. (To be) you in the Caucasus last year? 3. They (to leave) England when he (to be) still a child. 4. What he (to do) when you (to come) here? 5. He not yet (to come) back. 6. He (to come) already? 7. When you (to see) him last? 8. I not (to see) him for a very long time. 9. His health (to improve) greatly since I (to see) him last. 10. Last night I (to feel) tired and (to go) to bed very early. 11. Where you (to spend) your holidays? 12. You ever (to spend) your holidays in the Crimea? 13. While travelling in the Crimea I (to meet) your friend who (to spend) his holidays there. 14. I (to visit) never this place. 15. I (to visit) this place last year.

Ex. 10 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE:

1. "Have you ever thought about the future?" he asked me. (Du Maurier)  
2. "... I'm sure I don't know what has come over her lately ..." (Joyce)  
3. "I've seen very little Wilfred since he went East ..." (Galsworthy)  
4. "You will blow the bridge after the attack has started." (Hemingway)

5. "Oh, have I hurt you?" he cried. (Wells)
6. "Mrs. de Winter has been dead for over a year ..." (Du Maurier)
7. "Now," said Keawe, "I have sold for sixty which I bought for fifty, ..." (Stevenson)
8. "It is what I feared," he thought. "It is she who has bought it." (Stevenson)
9. "If I have been too ready to accept your friendship," she said, the colour deepening on her cheeks, "my ignorance must be my excuse." (S. K. Hocking)
10. "You have been so true a friend to me during all the voyage," she went on, ... (S. K. Hocking)
11. "I'm not sure you haven't done it on purpose — to stimulate our curiosity." (A. Christie)
12. "But, my dear lady," remonstrated Sir Henry, "it can't be all. What you have related is a tragic occurrence but not in any sense of the word a problem." (A. Christie)
13. "What man?" "The robber; him that the starts winked at. We have waited for him after dark these many nights, and we shall have him." (Dickens)
14. "...But it's too bad a night for that. The rain falls very heavy, and the wind has risen." (Dickens)
15. "He has told you what has passed between himself and my husband?" (Dickens)
16. "I have come to speak to you, in consequence of what passed just now." (Dickens)

Ex. 11 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT INDEFINITE, THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS, THE PRESENT PERFECT:

1. ... she has come in from scullery and is knitting a scarf for Adam. (Cronin)
2. "Why not join us? ..." "I'm so sorry," he said, "tomorrow I am probably driving to Sospel ..." (Du Maurier)
3. "Davy! What's happened? What are you doing?" he shouted angrily. (Aldridge)
4. "That is the way all men end," Anselmo said. "That is the way men have always ended ..." (Hemingway)
5. "Oh, but I understand she isn't really English. I've always heard her real name is Mademoiselle de la Ramee." (Maugham)
6. "My dear sir, that is just where you are wrong. That is just where the whole world has gone wrong. We are always getting away from the present moment." (Wells)
7. "Why doesn't Gladys answer the door?" She demanded. "Oh, no, of course, it's Thursday — Gladys's day out. I expect Mrs. Spenlow has fallen asleep. I don't expect you've made enough noise with this thing." (A. Christie)



8. He said, "I have always intended, ever since I was a small boy, to live in the country some day and have a garden of my own. I have always been very much attached to flowers ..." (A. Christie)
9. "You mean you really want to know what people are saying?" (A. Christie)
10. Women are constantly trying to commit suicide for love, but generally they take care not to succeed. (Maugham)
11. You probably haven't seen her since these summer holidays when Mum and Dad were abroad. (A. Christie)
12. I'm seeing the other nurse, Nurse O'Brien, today. (A. Christie)
13. As she turns to go, she finds that Bella has entered and is staring at her and her father with impassive hatred. (Gow and D'Useau)
14. You are being very absurd, Laura," she said coldly. (Mansfield)
15. When I've taken off my things we shall go into the next room and have tea. (Mansfield)
16. Gerald, if you are going away with Lord Illingworth, go at once. Go before it kills me: but don't ask me to meet him. (Wilde)
17. I'm leaving tonight... I'm going home to the Karroo. (Abrahams)
18. This will be the death of her when she hears it. (Dreiser)
19. You have told my learned friend that you have known Mr. Pickwick a long time. (Dickens)
20. He is always breaking the law. (Shaw)

## THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

had + V<sup>3</sup>

I (you, he, she, it, we, they) had written (translated)

|                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Had you written (translated)? | Yes, I had.<br>No, I hadn't. |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|

I had not (hadn't) written (translated)

**Минулий завершений час** виражає результат, що вже завершився до певного моменту в минулому або до початку іншої дії в минулому.  
**Слова-показники:** by 2 o'clock, by the time, by the 1st of January.

### *Структура стверджувального речення*

Іменник/ займенник + допоміжне дієслово (had) + основне дієслово у **III формі** / або із закінченням **–ed** + інші частини мови

I (you, he, she, it, we, they) had written (translated) a book.

### *Структура запитального речення*

Допоміжне дієслово (had) + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово у **III формі** / або із закінченням **–ed** + інші частини мови

|                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Had you written (translated) a book? | Yes, I had.<br>No, I hadn't. |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|

### *Структура заперечного речення*

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово (had) + частка not + основне дієслово у **III формі** / або із закінченням **–ed** + інші частини мови

I (you, he, she, it, we, you, they) had not (hadn't) written (translated) a book.

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 COMPLETE THE SENTENCES ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model: I had already finished my work...*

*— I had already finished my work before you asked me about it.*

*— had already finished my work by 7 o'clock.*

1. He had consulted the doctor ... 2. They had left for the USA ... 3. We had returned the book to the library ... 4. The pupils had passed their exam in English ... 5. The boy had watered the flowers ... 6. Our family had left the town ... 7. The brigade had built the bridge ... 8. We had done the work ... 9. The scientists had finished the experiment ...

Ex. 2 REPLACE THE INFINITIVES IN BRACKETS BY THE PAST INDEFINITE OR THE PAST PERFECT:

1. Last week we (to discuss) the performance which we (to see) at our drama theatre. 2. When I (to clean) the flat I (to begin) to watch TV. 3. The mother (to prepare) dinner by 3 o'clock. 4. My friend (to tell) me a lot of interesting he (to see) in London. 5. She (to show) me the new dress she (to sew) herself. 6. The rain (to stop) before we (to come) home. 7. The students (to write) a difficult test by 12 o'clock.

Ex. 3 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Коли я повернувся додому, моя маленька сестра вже заснула. 2. Ми закінчили цей важкий експеримент до 11-ї години. 3. Вона працювала на заводі допочатку війни. 4. Я переклав текст до того, як мій друг подзвонив мені. 5. Експедиція виїхала у гори до весни. 6. Наш клас склав екзамен із фізики до другої години. 7. Я показав другу нові журнали, які я купив у Києві. 8. Дівчинка розбила чашку, яку їй подарували на день народження. 9. Вона одягнула нове плаття, яке пошила сама. 10. Я написав твір до приходу батьків з роботи. 11. Вчитель пояснив нам помилки, які ми зробили у диктанті.

Ex. 4 READ THE SENTENCES AND SAY WHICH ACTIONS WERE DONE FIRST:

1. I had to buy a new pen because I had lost the old one. 2. The last electric train had gone when we got to the station. 3. After I had left for work I remembered that I had forgotten to ring you up. 4. We had collected our things and got into the bus before it started raining.

Ex. 5 ANSWER THE QUESTIONS:

1. What had you done before you left the house?
2. By what time had you done your homework yesterday?

3. What did you do after you had done your homework?
4. What had you done before you went to bed?
5. Where had you lived before your family moved to this place?

Ex. 6 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN. COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PAST PERFECT TENSE:

1. George made no answer, and we found, on going over, that he had been asleep for some time. (Jerome K. Jerome)
2. When they had waved good-night, Michael stopped on the steps and called to them. (Carter)
3. Osborn fully believed that Dobbin had come to announce his son's surrender. (Thackeray)
4. The other children who had grown up with him were still the same. (Abrahams)
5. Hardly had she sat down when a very stout gentleman ... flopped into the chair opposite hers. (Mansfield)
6. Very coolly she reviewed the scene she had been through. (Galsworthy)
7. The Infanta had never before seen this wonderful ceremony. (Wilde)
8. Ben was sorry then that he had brought his son. (Aldridge)
9. It had long been her pet plan that her uncles should benefit themselves and Bosinney by building country-houses. (Galsworthy)
10. "... — yes, I really do wish that I had never had a family, and then you would have known what it was to do without me!" (Dickens)
11. Everything of father's had gone wrong that night, and he hadn't pleased the public at all." (Dickens)
12. "... from the period when her father had said she was almost a young woman, — which seemed but yesterday, — she had scarcely attracted his notice again, when he found her quite a young woman." (Dickens)
13. For my part I had never before suspected that Poirot had so deep a vein of superstition in his nature. (A. Christie)
14. She had left that position (a betweenmaid) to marry the second gardener and with him had started a flower shop in London. The shop had prospered. Not so the gardener, who before long had sickened and died. His window had carried on the shop and enlarged it in an ambitious way. She had continued to prosper. Then she had sold the business at a handsome price and embarked upon matrimony for the second time — with Mr. Spenlow, a middle-aged jeweller who had inherited a small and struggling business. Not long afterwards they had sold the business and come down to St. Mary Mead. (A. Christie)

## THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

|                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| shall have<br>will have | + V <sup>3</sup> |
|-------------------------|------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I (we) shall have written (translated)<br>You (he, she, it, they) will have written (translated) |
|--|

|                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Will you have written (translated)? | Yes, I shall.<br>No, I shan't. |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|

|   |
|---|
| I shall not (shan't) have written (translated)<br>He will not (won't) have written (translated) |
|---|

**Майбутній завершений час** вживається для вираження результату, який завершиться до певного моменту або до початку іншої дії в майбутньому.

**Слова-показники:** by 3 o'clock tomorrow, by this time tomorrow, by the times he comes, by the evening, by the end of the week (month, year), before somebody comes тощо.

### *Структура стверджувального речення*

Іменник/ займенник + допоміжне дієслово **shall, will have** + основне дієслово у **III формі** / або із закінченням – **ed** + інші частини мови

I (we) shall have written (translated) a book.  
You (he, she, it, they) will have written (translated) a book.

### *Структура запитального речення*

Допоміжне дієслово **shall, will** + іменник/займенник + допоміжне дієслово **have** основне дієслово у **III формі** / або із закінченням – **ed** + інші частини мови

Will you have written (translated) a book?      Yes, I shall.  
No, I shan't.

### Структура заперечного речення

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово shall, will have + частка not + основне дієслово у **III формі** / або із закінченням – **ed** + інші частини мови

I shall not (shan't) have written (translated) a book.

He will not (won't) have written (translated) book.

### THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 TRANSLATE THE SENTENCES INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. He will have passed his examinations before you return from Kyiv. 2. The expedition will have left for the North by April. 3. I shall have given the final answer by three o'clock. 4. She will have looked up the new words in the dictionary before you come. 5. We shall have left the Institute by five o'clock tomorrow. 6. I shall have returned the book to the library by this time on Sunday. 7. The girls will have done the room before their mother comes home.

Ex. 2 COMPLETE THE SENTENCES ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model: She will have done the work ...*

— *She will have done the work by 6 o'clock.*

— *She will have done the work before you come.*

1. They will have come ... 2. The manager will have begun the meeting ... 3. I shall have started the work ... 4. My friend will have left school ... 5. Our family will have left for Canada ... 6. My little brother will have had breakfast ...

Ex. 3 PUT QUESTIONS TO THE WORDS IN BOLD TYPE:

1. My elder brother will have translated the text by 10 o'clock. 2. We shall have prepared supper before you come from work. 3. I shall have written the report by this time tomorrow. 4. The pupils of our form will have passed the exam in English by 12 o'clock. 5. The teacher will have checked up our tests by that time. 6. The expedition will have left for the North by April. 7. By 6 she will have taken her exam in English.

Ex. 4 MAKE UP YOUR OWN SENTENCES USING THE FOLLOWING WORD COMBINATIONS:

|     |                  |           |                               |
|-----|------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| I   | shall have given | a text    | by 10 o'clock.                |
| You | will have left   | a present | before the mother comes home. |

|      |                      |               |                     |
|------|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| She  | will have begun      | the work      | by spring.          |
| He   | shall have written   | the town      | by 11 o'clock.      |
| It   | will have done       | an exercise   | before you ring up. |
| We   | will have translated | an experiment | by tomorrow.        |
| They | will have stopped    | raining       | by the next week.   |

Ex. 5 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE:

1. "She will have given the answer by this time tomorrow", he replied. (Greene)
2. "I'll have come back before you finish your tea, Emily." (Maugham)
3. "We shall have returned from East by spring." (Hemingway)
4. "My sister will have reached the continent by the next month, I think." (S. K. Hocking)
5. "I suppose he will have started the travel before she returns home." (Maugham)
6. I shall be back by six, and I hope you will have had a good sleep by that time. (Marryat)
7. "I don't think Mrs. Bantry will have told us this story by that time," said Sir Henry gently. (A. Christie)
8. I shall have started out on my round by the time you go ... (Maugham)
9. "Another month will make seven weeks," she said bitterly. — "Seven weeks for what?" — "Seven weeks that I shan't have seen you ..." (Wilson)

Ex. 6 COMMENT ON THE USE OF TENSES EXPRESSING FUTURE ACTIONS OR STATES:

1. I'm going to Bertha; I'm going to Graddock direct and I mean to give him a piece of my mind. (Maugham)
2. "Dr. Ramsay is coming to luncheon tomorrow," she said. (Maugham)
3. Promise you won't do anything, Jean, till everything else has failed. (Galsworthy)
4. I'll see you before I go, Pyle. (Greene)
5. I'll come when you have no one else. (Eliot)
6. "Are you going out again, Miss Jane?" "Not me, I'm off to bed soon with a good book." (Hilton)
7. I shall tell them both that I'm going to be married with you. (Maugham)
8. I'm terribly sorry not to be able to ask you to lunch, but we're having it in rather a rush and leaving immediately after. (Murdoch)

## *The Perfect Continuous Tenses*

### THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

|                          |                    |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| have<br>been<br>has been | + V <sub>ing</sub> |
|--------------------------|--------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I (you, we, they) have been writing (translating)<br>He (she, it) has been writing (translating) |
|--|

|                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Have you been writing (translating)? | Yes, I have.<br>No, I haven't. |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|

|  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Has he (she, it) been writing (translating)? | Yes, she has.<br>No, she hasn't. |
|--|----------------------------------|

|   |
|---|
| I have not (haven't) been writing (translating)<br>He (she, it) has not (hasn't) been writing (translating) |
|---|

**Теперішній завершено-тривалий час** виражає дію, яка почалася до теперішнього моменту, тривала протягом деякого періоду часу і продовжувалася у момент мовлення або щойно завершилася безпосередньо перед моментом мовлення.

**Слова-показники:** for 2 hours, for a month, for the last two days (years, weeks), since 5 o'clock; у питаннях, які починаються зі слів: **How long?**, **Since when?**

#### **Структура стверджувального речення**

Іменник/ займенник + допоміжне дієслово (has, have) + been + основне дієслово із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

I (you, we, they) have been writing (translating) a book.  
He (she, it) has been writing (translating) a book.



### Структура запитального речения

Допоміжне дієслово (has, have) + been + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

Have you been writing (translating) a book? Yes, I have.  
No, I haven't.

Has he (she, it) been writing (translating) a book? Yes, she has.  
No, she hasn't.

## Структура заперечного речення

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово (has, have) + been + частка not  
+ основне дієслово із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

I have not (haven't) been writing (translating) a book.  
He (she, it) has not (hasn't) been writing (translating) a book.

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 TRANSLATE THE SENTENCES INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. She has been writing a composition for an hour already. 2. I have been reading an interesting book since I returned home. 3. My brother has been working at English translation since the very morning. 4. He has been suffering from a headache all day long. 5. We have been gathering mushrooms ever since sunrise. 6. I have been listening to the music since 5 o'clock. 7. My friend has been training his dog for 3 years already. 8. The gardener has been sorting the apples since morning. 9. The children have been playing football since the mother came home.

Ex. 2 COMPLETE THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES ADDING SUITABLE ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS AS IN THE MODEL:

*Model: I have been reading ...*

— *I have been reading since 7 o'clock.*

— *I have been reading for 2 hours already.*

1. He has been ill... 2. She has been working in the garden ... 3. ... have you been here? 4. The baby has been crying ... 5. The students have been passing their exam ... 6. The workers have been building the new bridge ... 7. I have

been listening to the music ... 8. My sister has been cleaning the room ... 9. They have been playing tennis ...

Ex. 3 ANSWER THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

1. How long have you been learning English?
2. How long have you been reading this book?
3. Do you play chess? How long have you been playing it?
4. How long has your sister (brother) been studying at school?
5. How long have you been doing these exercises?
6. Has it been raining since the very morning?
7. Have you been living in this town for 5 years?

Ex. 4 PUT QUESTIONS TO THE WORDS IN BOLD TYPE:

1. My elder brother has been playing football since the childhood.
2. The boy has been doing his homework for 2 hours already.
3. The pupils have been writing a dictation for 40 minutes.
4. My mother has been preparing dinner since 11 o'clock.
5. The girls have been watching TV since they came home.

EX. 5 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:

1. "I have been drinking all day and making merry," said Keawe. (Stevenson)
2. "You look very tired," he said sympathetically. "I am afraid you have been overdoing yourself." (S. K. Hocking)
3. "I am afraid I have been making an awful simpleton of myself," she said shyly. (S. K. Hocking)
4. "I don't see anything in it (fire), Tom, particularly. But since I have been looking at it, I have been wondering about you and me grown up." (Dickens)
5. "Now who has been talking? I suppose the girl has." (A. Christie)
6. Dr. Lloyd cleared his throat. "I've been thinking," he said rather diffidently. "Do you say, Mrs. Bantry, that you yourself were ill?" (A. Christie)
7. "My-my lord," said Gashford, starting and looking round as though in great surprise. "I have disturbed you!" "I have not been sleeping." (Dickens)
8. "I have been telling Miss Meadows that civilisation has extended over all these regions, ..." (S. K. Hocking)

Ex. 6 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN. COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PRESENT PERFECT AND PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSES.

1. Ever since I saw you last I have been thinking, thinking. (Dreiser)
2. She did not look at him, "I've been trying to tell you all day ..." (Cronin)
3. She's been married happily now these past four years ... (Braine)
4. He has been studying at the University for 6 years.
5. "I've been thinking it over, Mr. Holmes, and I feel that I have been hasty in taking your remarks amiss." (Conan Doyle)
6. "I've had nothing to eat all day," the large boy said mournfully. (Coppard)

7. "So, here you are! And I've been looking for you everywhere." (Bennett)
8. "By the way, you've been talking about me. I see it written in your faces. Your silence tells me all. I could even guess what you've been saying ...", Gladys cried, making a face at him. (Priestley)
9. Years have passed since we began this life. (Dickens)
10. I've been making some sandwiches. Won't you come up and have some?  
(A. Christie)
11. "Antonia has been telling me about your flat," said Rosemary. (Murdoch)
12. I don't know what's been the matter with me. I've been so miserable, Eddie ... (Maugham)
13. Do you know that Robert Oldham and Caroline have been madly in love with one another for the last ten years? They've waited all this time, and now at last Caroline is free. (Maugham)
14. Sambo, the black servant, has just rung the bell. (Thackeray)

## THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

had been + V<sub>ing</sub>

I (you, he, she, it, we, they) had been writing (translating)

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Had you been writing (translating)? | Yes, I had.<br>No, I hadn't. |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|

I had not (hadn't) been writing (translating)

**Минулий завершено-тривалий час** вказує на тривалу дію, що почалася раніше іншої дії, яка зазвичай виражається формою Past Perfect, і під час настання цієї дії все ще деякий час тривала.

**Слова-показники:** for two hours, for a month, since 5 o'clock, by last month.

### *Структура стверджувального речення*

Іменник/ займенник + допоміжне дієслово (had) + been + основне дієслово  
із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

I (you, we, they) had been writing (translating) a book.  
He (she, it) had been writing (translating) a book.

### *Структура питального речення*

Допоміжне дієслово (had) + been + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово  
із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| Had you been writing (translating) a book? | Yes, I had.<br>No, I hadn't. |
|--|------------------------------|

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Had he (she, it) been writing (translating) a book? | Yes, she had.<br>No, she hadn't. |
|---|----------------------------------|

## Структура заперечного речення

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово (had) + been + частка not + основне дієслово із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

I had not (hadn't) been writing (translating) a book.  
He (she, it) had not (hadn't) been writing (translating) a book.

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 COMPLETE THE SENTENCES ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model: She had been reading a book ...*

— *She had been reading a book for an hour before her mother came home.*

— *She had been reading a book for two hours when her parents returned home from work.*

1. She had been working here ... 2. The teacher had been explaining the rule ...  
3. Our family had been living in that house ... 4. I had been waiting for my friend ...  
5. The boys had been playing chess ... 6. The girl had been sleeping ...  
7. The orchestra had been playing ...

Ex. 2 ASK QUESTIONS TO THE WORDS IN BOLD TYPE:

*Model: She had been listening to the music for two hours when her friend came to her.*

— *What had she been doing for two hours when her friend came to her?*

1. The young man had been working at the laboratory for two years before he decided to enter the University. 2. We had been packing up our things for two hours when it was time to go to the railway station. 3. The scientist had been working at the experiment for about a year before the problem was solved. 4. They had been sailing for about a month when they saw a small island. 5. It had been snowing all day when I left home. 6. I had been dusting the room for half an hour when my mother came home. 7. She had been waiting for forty minutes before the taxi came. 8. The girl had been listening to the music/or two hours before her brother brought her an interesting book from the library.

Ex. 3 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN. COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:

1. He was laughing heartily in a high key at a story which he had been telling Gabriel on the stairs... (Joyce)

2. Over tea Lanny told her about Cape Town and what he had been doing. (Abrahams)
3. The children who had been playing in front of the little church... stopped and drew near to watch the spectacle. (Abrahams)
4. Peggotty and I were sitting one night by the parlour fire, alone, I had been reading to Peggotty about crocodiles. (Dickens)
5. One night when Miss Murdstone had been developing certain household plans to her brother, ... my mother suddenly began to cry. (Dickens)
6. They had been quarrelling now for nearly three quarters of one hour... the voices floated down the corridor, from the other end of the flat. (Huxley)
7. Tom blew his smoke aside, after he had been smoking a little while, and took an observation of his friend. (Dickens)
8. We had been sitting there an hour and a half. (DM Maurier)
9. Rainborough noticed that she had been crying, her face was stained with tears... (Murdoch)
10. There were bits of work that, because I had been doing them so long, I knew better than anyone else. (Snow)
11. Rosa had been working in the factory for about two years. Before that she had been a journalist. (Murdoch)
12. As he was in dinner dress, Fanny asked where he had been dining. (Dickens)
13. He turned off the electric light. The electric light had been burning all night. (Hemingway)
14. I realized that he had come away with me in order to discuss once more what he had been already discussing for hours with his sister-in-law. (Maugham)
15. She wasn't there, ... her dress she had been wearing was lying across the chair. (A. Christie)
16. Here I saw the man, whom I had lost sight of some time; for I had been travelling in the provinces. (Dickens)

Ex. 4 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PAST CONTINUOUS AND THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSES:

1. He was hitting at my door, but I lay possum ... (Greene)
2. He liked music, but the piece she was playing had no melody for him ... (Joyce)
3. Michael rose and clutched his hat. Wilfrid had said exactly what he himself had really been thinking ever since he came. (Galsworthy)
4. He hadn't published one thing that Eric had seen, but Eric decided not to ask what he had been doing. (Wilson)
5. When the first dinner-bell went, he was pacing the deck with a cigar in his mouth, ... (S. K. Hocking)

6. "... and they gave me up with a sort of joyous exultation, though I know their hearts were breaking all the time." (S. K. Hocking)
7. The wind was freshening without; it drove the snow before it, ... (Stevenson)
8. The cold was growing sharper as the night went on. (Stevenson)
9. "It had been snowing all day when I left home. (A. Christie)
10. They had been sailing for about a month when they saw a small island. (Stevenson)
11. After a minute's conversation at the carriage window, in which it was apparent that he was vastly entertaining on the subject of the mob, he stopped lightly in, and was driven away. (Dickens)
12. He seemed to be quickly and carefully deciding what he was going to say. (Murdoch)
13. She was always telling herself that the only rational course was to make Edward a final statement of her intentions, then break off all communications. (Maugham)
14. When the Gadfly raised his head the sun had set, and the red glow was dying in the west. (Voynich)
15. He was in Lincolnshire at the time, and I was living near him. (Johnson)
16. Susan Nipper stood opposite to her young mistress one morning, as she folded and sealed a note she had been writing. (Dickens)
17. He had sat down with the child on his knees, and was helping her to put the flowers in order. (Voynich)

## THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

|                                   |                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| shall have been<br>will have been | + V <sub>ing</sub> |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|

|  |
|--|
| I (we) shall have been writing (translating)<br>You (he, she, it, they) will have been writing (translating) |
|--|

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Will you have been writing (translating)? | Yes, I shall.<br>No, I shan't. |
|---|--------------------------------|

|   |
|---|
| I shall not (shan't) have been writing (translating)<br>He will not (won't) have been writing (translating) |
|---|

**Майбутній завершено-тривалий час** виражає дію, яка почнеться до певного моменту у майбутньому і буде тривати саме до цього моменту.  
**Слова-показники:** for two hours, for a month, by September, since 2 o'clock; How long?

### *Структура стверджувального речення*

Іменник/ займенник + допоміжне дієслово (shall, will ) + been + основне дієслово із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

I (we) shall have been writing (translating) a book.  
You (he, she, it, they) will have been writing (translating) a book.

### *Структура запитального речення*

Допоміжне дієслово (shall, will) + been + іменник/займенник + основне дієслово із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

Will you have been writing (translating)?      Yes, I shall.  
No, I shan't.



### Структура заперечного речення

Іменник / займенник + допоміжне дієслово (shall, will) + been + частка not  
+ основне дієслово із закінченням – **ing** + інші частини мови

I shall not (shan't) have been writing (translating) a book.

He will not (won't) have been writing (translating) a book.

### THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. I shall have been translating this difficult article for two hours before you come. 2. He will have been skating with his friends for more than an hour before his parents come home. 3. They will have been listening to the music for some time when you ring them up. 4. We shall have been travelling by sea for several weeks before you join us. 5. The young man will have been making the plan of the journey for some hours by 6 o'clock in the evening.

Ex. 2 COMPLETE THE SENTENCES ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model: She will have been listening to the music ...*

— *She will have been listening to the music for 40 minutes before her brother comes home from school.*

— *She will have been listening to the music for some time by 12 o'clock.*

1. I shall have been writing ... 2. Our family will have been living in this house ... 3. They will have been learning German and English ... 4. The students of our group will have been taking their lesson ... 5. The child will have been sleeping ... 6. The farmers will have been working in the field ... 7. They will have been building this bridge ... 8. She will have been taking her English lesson ... 9. The students will have been planting the trees ... 10. The little girl will have been watering the flowers ... 11. I shall have been doing my homework ... 12. The students will have been taking part in the concert ... 13. I shall have been preparing for our family party ... 14. The teacher will have been explaining ...

Ex. 3 MAKE UP YOUR OWN SENTENCES USING THE FOLLOWING WORDS AND WORD COMBINATIONS. USE THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE:

*Model: clean the room / for three hours / before the mother comes home.  
— She will have been cleaning the room for three hours before the mother comes home.*

|              |                     |                    |  |
|--------------|---------------------|--------------------|--|
| I            | write exercises     | for two hours      | when you visit me.                     |
| My friend    | pass the exam       | for about an hour  | before you come.                       |
| She          | plant trees         | for half an hour   | by Sunday.                             |
| The pupils   | have dinner         | for a week         | by the 1st of May.                     |
| The children | rain                | for three hours    | before the father returns home.        |
| It           | listen to the radio | for twenty minutes | by 6 p.m.                              |
| The boy      | do homework         | for two days       | before the teacher looks them through. |

Ex. 4 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN. COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS, FUTURE PERFECT, FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSES:

1. "I shan't be seeing him again, but you'll be going, Dinny ..." (Galsworthy)
2. "... You wait, the sun will be shining for you when we come to Manderley." (Du Maurier)
3. "I shall have started out my round by the time you go ..." (Maugham)
4. Sarie's eyes passed over Lanny's face. "I'll be waiting," she said. "Good-bye." (Abrahams)
5. "...all the things of Maggie's knitting will be gone and you will not have bought one ..." (Eliot)
6. "Fair cousin," said young Tasburgh, "I shall be thinking of you day and night ..." (Galsworthy)
7. Next June I shall have been living in this house for six weeks. (H. Palmer)
8. Now it's twelve o'clock. I started writing at nine o'clock and I shall continue until three o'clock or later. Now I have been writing for three hours, and at three o'clock I shall have been writing for six hours. (H. Palmer)

## THE FUTURE - IN - THE PAST TENSES

### The Future Indefinite - in - the Past Tense

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| should<br>would | + V <sup>1</sup> |
|-----------------|------------------|

### The Future Continuous - in - the Past Tense

|                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| should<br>would | + be + V <sub>ing</sub> |
|-----------------|-------------------------|

### The Future Perfect - in - the Past Tense

|                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| should<br>would | + have + V <sup>3</sup> |
|-----------------|-------------------------|

### The Future Perfect Continuous - in - the Past Tense

|                 |                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| should<br>would | + have + been + V <sub>ing</sub> |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|

**Майбутній–в–Минулому** потрібний при узгодженні часів у непрякій мові. Допоміжні дієслова **shall/will (Future)**, що відповідають за майбутній час, автоматично змінюються на **should/would (Future-in-the Past)**, а інші складові частини видо-часових конструкцій залишаються незмінними.

Узгодження часів у непрякій мові полягає в тому, що коли в головному реченні дієслово знаходиться у минулому часі, то в підрядному додатковому реченні ми повинні вживати відповідні **Майбутні-у-Минулому (Future-in-the Past)** часи.

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 MAKE UP SENTENCES ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model: I said that I ...*

*— I said that I should invite my friend on Sunday.*

|                  |      |        |                                     |
|------------------|------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| I told her       | I    |        | go there at once.                   |
| He said          | he   |        | pass the examination the next week. |
| We promised that | we   | should | get tickets beforehand.             |
| They knew        | they | would  | finish the work in two days.        |
| She answered     | she  |        | read the book with the dictionary.  |
| I thought        |      |        | be able to follow his advice.       |

Ex. 2 TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH:

1. Батько пообіцяв, що влітку наша сім'я буде відпочивати на Чорному морі. 2. Лікар сказав, що відвідає хворого пацієнта через 2 дні. 3. Я думав, що вона не прийде вчасно. 4. Ми вирішили, що зможемо здійснити наш план. 5. Мій товариш пообіцяв, що зустрине мене на станції. 6. Вчитель сказав, що підтримає нас у цій ситуації. 7. Тренер сказав, що наша волейбольна команда поїде у Варшаву через місяць. 8. Вона думала, що вчитель не запитає її на уроці. 9. Вони знали, що не встигнуть на поїзд, якщо не поквапляться.

Ex. 3 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE INDEFINITE-IN-THE PAST:

1. He knew he would work in the garden in the mornings.
2. She said she would begin translating the article at 10 o'clock in the morning.
3. Jane knew that her brother would be at college at that time.
4. The doctor promised that he would come in two days again.
5. She suggested that the shop would be opened the next day.
6. He had loved and lost, and would have to make the best of it. (S. K. Hocking)
7. He left that the less he saw of her, the more easy it would be for him to fight his battle and conquer. In a day or two now they would be at Capetown, and they would go their separate ways for ever. (S. K. Hocking)
8. ... but he believed it would be different when the great spaces of the African continent had swallowed her up. (S. K. Hocking)
9. "She always used to tell me she was sure you would be easier with me than this." (Dickens)
10. "And, Thomas, it is really shameful, with my poor head continually wearing me out, that a boy brought up as you have been, and whose education has cost

what yours has, should be found encouraging his sister to wonder, when he knows his father has expressly said that she is not to do it." (Dickens)

11. "... and I had better go where I can take with me some advantage of your influence, than where I should lose it altogether. (Dickens)

12. "But they wouldn't laugh sometimes, and then the father cried. Lately, they very often wouldn't laugh, and he used to go home despairing." (Dickens)

13. "... And often and often of a night he used to forget all his troubles in wondering whether the Sultan would let the lady go on with the story, or would have her head cut off before it finished." (Dickens)

14. "Mr. Sleary promised to write as soon as ever father should be heard of, and I trust to him to keep his word." (Dickens)

15. At about this point Mr. Grandgrind's eye would fall upon her, and, under the influence of that wintry piece of fact, she would become torpid again. (Dickens)

16. "I acknowledged to this ridiculous idiosyncrasy as a reason why I would give them (English people) a little more play. (Dickens)

17. "I wondered what grandfather would say?" (S. K. Hocking)

18. ... Give it out that you were disappointed in me; that I had not developed as you expected I would; that you concluded it would be better not to marry at all than marry an unsuitable woman. Say anything you like ..." (S. K. Hocking)

Ex. 4 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE FUTURE INDEFINITE, THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS, THE FUTURE PERFECT AND THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS-IN-THE PAST:

1. He knew she would work at the library in the evening. He knew she would be working at the library at 9 o'clock in the morning. He knew she would have done her work by 4 o'clock. He knew she would have been working for some hours before he came to the library.

2. She said she would begin typing the article at 8 o'clock in the morning. The article is not long. She said she would still be typing it at 10 o'clock; she would have been typing it for 3 hours by 11, and she would have finished typing by 11:30.

## THE TENSE FORMS IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

### ЧАСОВІ ФОРМИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОГО ДІЄСЛОВА В ПАСИВНОМУ СТАНІ

В англійській мові (як і в українській) дієслова вживаються в активному і пасивному станах. Якщо підметом речення є суб'єкт дії, то дієслово-присудок вживається в активному стані. Усі часові форми англійського дієслова, розглянуті вище, є формами активного стану. Якщо підметом речення є об'єкт дії, то дієслово-присудок вживається в пасивному стані. Отже, пасивний стан вживається, коли підмет є об'єктом дії і на нього скерована дія. Часове значення дієслова в пасивному стані за смисловим навантаженням однакове з формами в активному стані (тобто, наприклад, **Present Indefinite** в активному стані і в пасивному стані має однакове смислове-часове значення — *дія, що відбувається регулярно, щоденно в теперішньому часі*), але за структурою (формою) в реченні вони будуть відрізнятися. Форма дієслова в пасивному стані є складною — вона складається з допоміжного дієслова **to be** у відповідних формах і часах та дієприкметника минулого часу (**Past Participle II**) основного дієслова.

Нижче подано формули видо-часових форм англійського дієслова в пасивному стані:

### THE PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE

|     |                  |
|-----|------------------|
| am  |                  |
| are | + V <sup>3</sup> |
| is  |                  |

### THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE

|      |                  |
|------|------------------|
| was  |                  |
| were | + V <sup>3</sup> |

## **THE FUTURE INDEFINITE TENSE**

|                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| shall be<br>will be | + V <sup>3</sup> |
|---------------------|------------------|

## **THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE**

|             |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| have<br>Has | + been + V <sup>3</sup> |
|-------------|-------------------------|

## **THE PAST PERFECT TENSE**

|                           |
|---------------------------|
| had been + V <sup>3</sup> |
|---------------------------|

## **THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| shall have<br>will have | + been + V <sup>3</sup> |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|

## **THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE**

|                 |                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| am<br>are<br>is | + being + V <sup>3</sup> |
|-----------------|--------------------------|

## **THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE**

|             |                          |
|-------------|--------------------------|
| was<br>were | + being + V <sup>3</sup> |
|-------------|--------------------------|

## THE EXERCISES

Ex. 1 TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. Chairs are usually made of wood. 2. The article was translated with a dictionary. 3. The meeting will be organized in the big hall of the Institute. 4. Don't enter the classroom. A student is being asked there. 5. Has she just been asked by the teacher? What is her mark? 6. At the examination last year we were asked by two teachers. 7. Pupils are asked at every lesson. 8. English is spoken in many countries of the world. 9. This book was written by Daniel Defoe. 10. The room is cleaned by me on Fridays. 11. My little sister is taken to the circus every Sunday. 12. My friend was being asked by the teacher when I came in. 13. I am taught English by two teachers. 14. The letter has been just written. 15. The work had been done by 6 o'clock. 16. The trees will have been planted by us by summer. 17. The sonata was played by a famous pianist. 18. The tourists will be met by the guide at the platform. 19. I was being asked by the English teacher at 11 o'clock.

Ex. 2 CHANGE THE SENTENCES USING THE PASSIVE VOICE:

*Model: I have read his letter.*

*— His letter has been read by me.*

1. Our students are discussing an interesting subject. 2. Our specialists are building gigantic electric power stations. 3. They will finish their work in time. 4. She was writing a letter when I came in. 5. They had already translated the article when I gave them my dictionary. 6. Will they have planted the trees by the beginning of May? 7. She has just written the task. 8. He wrote a new detective story. 9. My sister washed the dishes. 10. I have broken my favourite cup.

Ex. 3 CHANGE THE SENTENCES USING THE ACTIVE VOICE:

*Model: The exercise was written by him yesterday.*

*— He wrote the exercise yesterday.*

1. The patient was recommended a severe diet by the doctor. 2. The floor will be swept by my sister. 3. I was taken by my parents to the sea last summer. 4. The book will be brought by her tomorrow. 5. This tasty cake has just been made by my mother. 6. This important work had been finished by us by the 1st of July. 7. The list of new words will have been completed by me by tomorrow.

Ex. 4 GIVE ANSWERS TO THESE QUESTIONS OR STATEMENTS ACCORDING TO THE MODEL:

*Model: a) Do people speak English in many countries?*

*— Yes, English is spoken in many countries.*



1. Do they clean the flat every Friday? 2. Do the pupils read many texts at the English lessons? 3. Did the girl buy a new book yesterday? 4. Did your classmates discuss the problem last week? 5. Will you water the flowers tomorrow? 6. Have you just finished your work? 7. Does the teacher ask us a lot of questions at the lesson? 8. Do you spend free time in the country-side?

*Model:*        *b) They have told Ann about that.*  
                    *— So, she's been told.*

1. They've invited the Browns to the birthday party. 2. We've shown the guests around the city. 3. They've discussed the problem. 4. She's written the letter. 5. My sister has cleaned the room.

*Model:*        *c) Have they discussed the problem?*  
                    *— No, it's still being discussed.*

1. Have you read the book? 2. Has she done the work? 3. Have you parents written this letter? 4. Have they sold all the books? 5. Have you translated the text?

Ex. 5     INSERT THE MISSING PART OF THE ANALYTICAL FORM OF THE VERB (PASSIVE OR ACTIVE):

1. An interesting article ... published in the next issue of the magazine. It ... published by the 1st of May. It ... not ... published yet. I ... written now. The author of the article ... working at it for two months. When ... his preceding article published? It ... not yet published by June. It... discussed when I came to the sitting of the chair. They ... discussing it for more than an hour before a certain resolution ... arrived at.

2. My room ... not ... papered since the new furniture ... bought. I think it must ... papered this spring. My neighbour's room ... papered now. The paper-hanger ... working for two days. He says the work ... finished soon. It ... finished by the next month. I shall ask my friend not to come to my place when my room ... papered.

3. Who ... this cushion... embroidered by? It ... embroidered by my sister last year. She ... embroidering in for more than two months before the work was finished. ... any other cushions embroidered in the same way? I don't think so, my sister is too busy now.

Ex.6     EXERCISE ON THE USE OF THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS. TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. The outstanding violinist was much spoken about. 2. Our lecturer in literature is always attentively listened to. 3. Strict discipline is insisted upon in any kind

of serious work. 4. He doesn't like to be interfered with. 5. This cellar has never been lived in. 6. Little children are always looked after. 7. Don't put on this old-fashioned coat. You will be laughed at. 8. His suggestions are never objected to. 10. The bed was not slept in. 11. Has the doctor been called for? 12. I'm sure this event will be commented upon in newspapers.

Ex. 7 COMMENT ON THE USE OF THE PASSIVE VERB FORM. WRITE OUT THE INFINITIVE OF THE VERBS. TRANSLATE THE SENTENCES INTO UKRAINIAN:

1. We are welcomed by a very civil woman in a white apron. (Dickens)
2. He can have food in, too; but he is not allowed to smoke. (Galsworthy)
3. "Look, Max," she would have said, "look what we've been sent." (Du Maurier)
4. Who wants to be foretold the weather? (Jerome K. Jerome)
5. He said in English, "I'm so sorry I had to ask you to come." "I wasn't asked. I was ordered." (Greene)
6. ... they were marched off to the nursery. (Mansfield)
7. "... I'm not going to be talked to like this." (Bennett)
8. "... ask Peggotty if I didn't do very well when I wasn't interfered with!" (Dickens)
9. Their conference was put an end to by the anxious young lover himself. (Austen)
10. He worked from 8 a.m. to 8 p. m. every day and was delighted if he was given week-end work. (Walsh)
11. At this point a maid announced that supper was served and instantly Gilbert took his departure. (Dreiser)
12. I darted back into the morning-room again, just in time. I had not been seen. (Du Maurier)
13. I was sent in to get my tea. (Dickens)
14. Even when the lessons are done, the worst is yet to happen, in the shape of an appalling sum. (Dickens)
15. "That's very good of you," said Dinny, icily, "but the harm is done, Professor." (Galsworthy)
16. This observation must be limited exclusively to his daughter. (Dickens)
17. "Good gracious bless me, how my poor head is vexed and worried by that girl Jupe's so perseveringly asking, over and over again, about her tiresome litters!" (Dickens)
18. It is said that every life has its roses and thorns. There seemed, however, to have been a misadventure or mistake in Stephen's case, whereby somebody else had become possessed of his roses, and he had become possessed of the same somebody else's thorns in addition to his own. (Dickens)
19. He was usually called Old Stephen, ... (Dickens)

20. The lights in the great factories, which looked, when they were illuminated, like Fiary palaces, ... (Dickens)
21. When she had said this, with a smile which would have been quite expressed, though nothing of her had been seen but her pleasant eyes, she replaced her hood again and they went on together. (Dickens)
22. The expression was not lost upon her; ... (Dickens)
23. When she was lost to his view, he pursued his homeward way, ... (Dickens)
24. "You're a steady Hand, and I was not mistaken." (Dickens)
25. "I was acquainted with all this, you know," said Mr. Bounderby," except the last clause, long ago." (Dickens)

## TESTS FOR SELF-CONTROL

d) the / —

d) the

d) —

d) An / the

d) a / the

d) themselves

d) ours

d) the other

d) themselves

10. Don't talk about them. Let's talk about something ... .  
 a) an interesting c) the most interesting  
 b) more interesting d) interesting
11. I think dogs are ... than cats.  
 a) intelligent c) the most intelligent  
 b) more intelligent d) the intelligent
12. She has ... job of all.  
 a) a difficult c) a more difficult  
 b) more difficult d) the most difficult
13. Which is ... : five, fifteen or fifty?  
 a) a little c) less  
 b) little d) the least
14. This is ... problem she has ever had.  
 a) a great c) the greatest  
 b) a greater d) more great
15. My case is not very ... . Yours is ... .  
 a) heavy c) the most heavy  
 b) heavier d) more heavy
16. The weather was not very ... yesterday but it is ... today.  
 a) good c) the best  
 b) better d) more better
17. I ... my friend yet.  
 a) haven't seen c) don't see  
 b) didn't see d) will not see
18. He ... TV when the phone rang.  
 a) watches c) was watching  
 b) has watched d) watched
19. Mary is from Paris but ... in London for two years.  
 a) lives c) has lived  
 b) is living d) will be living

20. The train to Kyiv ... at 8:20 AM.

- a) leaves
- b) is leaving
- c) leave
- d) left

21. Tommy is tired; he ... football for hours.

- a) played
- b) has been playing
- c) had played
- d) will have been playing

22. While Kate was cooking dinner, Ann ... the house.

- a) was cleaning
- b) has cleaned
- c) has cleaned
- d) had been cleaning

23. He went to bed after the film ... .

- a) has ended
- b) ended
- c) had ended
- d) ends

24. She has been eating a lot lately; I think she ... weight.

- a) puts on
- b) put on
- c) has put on
- d) is putting on

25. He usually ... by train.

- a) has traveled
- b) travels
- c) is travelling
- d) had traveled

26. He filled in his name, signed the contract and ... it to the secretary.

- a) gave
- b) has given
- c) had given
- d) was giving

27. He was soaked to the skin because he ... in the rain.

- a) walked
- b) is waling
- c) had been walking
- d) was walking

28. She took her raincoat as it ... .

- a) was raining
- b) is raining
- c) has been raining
- d) had been raining

29. Her eyes are red because she ... onions.

- a) peeled
- b) has been peeling
- c) has peeled
- d) was peeling

30. He ... in this house for 5 months.

- a) is living
- b) was living
- c) has been living
- d) lives

31. She took her raincoat as it ... .

- a) was raining
- b) is raining
- c) has been raining
- d) had been raining

32. She was ironing while her brother ... television.

- a) has been watching
- b) is watching
- c) had been watching
- d) was watching

33. She ... the news when I saw her.

- a) didn't hear
- b) hasn't heard
- c) hadn't heard
- d) will not hear

34. Simon ... as a waiter until he finds a better job.

- a) is working
- b) works
- c) worked
- d) has worked

35. ... this new film yet?

- a) Do you see
- b) Have you seen
- c) Are you seeing
- d) Did you see

36. Mike ... the flowers in the garden since eight this morning.

- a) has watered
- b) waters
- c) is watering
- d) has been watering

37. She ... the best actress of the year.

- a) will be chosen as
- b) will chose
- c) will be being chosen as
- d) is chosen

38. These plants ... three times a week.

- a) you should water
- b) are watered
- c) should be watered
- d) can be watered

39. He ... at.

- a) is often laughed
- b) are often laughed
- c) has often been laughed
- d) is often laughing

40. You ... many questions.  
 a) didn't be asked  
 b) wasn't asked  
 c) aren't be asked  
 d) won't be asked
41. As he behaves badly, he ...  
 a) was punished  
 b) will be punished  
 c) is punished  
 d) has been punished
42. The logs ... too long for our fireplace.  
 a) are cut  
 b) is cut  
 c) have to be cut  
 d) have been cut
43. The book ... everywhere.  
 a) must be looked for  
 b) has been looked for  
 c) is looked for  
 d) is being looked for
44. She ... with the housework now.  
 a) is being helped  
 b) has been helped  
 c) is helped  
 d) won't been helped
45. The fence ...  
 a) might have been painted  
 b) has been painted  
 c) had be painted  
 d) have be painted
46. The papers ... by tomorrow afternoon.  
 a) are received  
 b) had been received  
 c) will have been received  
 d) have been received
47. Each month ... into weeks.  
 a) are divided  
 b) is being divided  
 c) will be divided  
 d) is divided
48. These lilac bushes ...  
 a) should be trimmed  
 b) is being trimmed  
 c) had been trimmed  
 d) was trimmed
49. The plain ... in London yesterday.  
 a) weren't delayed  
 b) hasn't been delayed  
 c) wasn't delayed  
 d) wasn't being delayed



50. The letter ... by the chief of police.

a) has to sign

b) has to signed

c) can to be signed

d) has to be signed

## II. НЕОСОБОВІ ФОРМИ ДІЄСЛОВА

### THE NON-FINITE FORMS OF THE VERB

#### ЧАСТИНА I. ІНФІНІТИВ

Інфінітив (неозначена форма дієслова, перша форма дієслова, “Base Form of the Verb”) у граматичній системі англійської мови займає проміжне положення між дієсловом та іменником. Формальною ознакою інфінітива в українській мові є закінчення „-ти, -тися”, в російській мові закінчення — „-и/-ись” або „-ть/-ться”, в англійській мові — інфінітивна частка **to**, яка, однак, не завжди є присутньою при дієслові у неозначеній формі. Український інфінітив, як і російський, називає тільки дію, англійський інфінітив має форми, які виражають граматичні значення виду (тривалого, незавершеного, завершеного) і стану (активного та пасивного).

#### ФОРМИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОГО ІНФІНІТИВА

| Forms              | Active                                    | Passive                                 |
|--------------------|---|---|
| Simple/Indefinite  | to ask (to give)                          | To be asked (to be given)               |
| Continuous         | to be asking (to be giving)               | —                                       |
| Perfect            | to have asked (to have given)             | To have been asked (to have been given) |
| Perfect Continuous | to have been asking (to have been giving) | —                                       |

**Примітка 1.** Для порівняння в дужках подано інфінітивні форми дієслова *give* як одного з нестандартних (неправильних) дієслів.

**Вправа 1.** Утворіть форми інфінітива одного з стандартних дієслів (e.g. answer, approach, develop, observe, increase, investigate, study, supply) і одного з нестандартних дієслів (e.g. break, feel, grow, leave, say, take, think, write).

## Підрозділ 1.1 Функції інфінітива

В якості самостійного члена речення інфінітив може виконувати функції підмета, додатка, обставини, означення, вставного слова.

Порівняйте:

- 1) To find the solution is of prime importance.
- 2) I asked him to write about his progress.
- 3) To show the difference, we have compared the diagrams.
- 4) The problem to discuss next is our participation in the joint project.
- 5) To sum up, there are two sets of evidence obtained.

Інфінітив у функції підмета може займати початкову позицію в реченні (To drive a car is not easy). Більш типовою, однак, є структура з двома підметами, де на початку речення знаходиться формальний підмет it, а інфінітив-підмет розташовується ближче до кінця висловлювання (It is not easy to drive a car).

Для інфінітива у функції обставини мети початкова позиція зустрічається частіше ніж для інфінітива-підмета, хоча інфінітив мети може розташовуватися і в кінці речення. Переклад інфінітива-мети здійснюється за допомогою віддієслівного іменника з прийменником „для” або за допомогою сполучників „щоб”, „для того щоб”, „так щоб”. Англійські аналоги цих сполучників — in order (to), so as (to) — можуть іноді бути присутніми у перекладі.

Порівняйте:

- 1) To understand the importance of the event you should know all the facts. — Для того щоб зрозуміти важливість (для розуміння важливості) цієї події, вам слід знати всі факти.
- 2) In order to eliminate random errors they made several runs of the experiment. — Щоб виключити випадкові помилки, вони повторили експеримент декілька разів.
- 3) We use oil or grease so as to avoid damage. — Ми використовуємо рідке або тверде мастило, для того щоб уникнути пошкодження.

Інфінітив у функції обставини-наслідку співвідноситься у реченні з такими словами, як too (занадто), enough, sufficiently (достатньо), sufficient (достатній), наприклад: The data are not valid enough to rely on them. — Ці дані недостатньо вірогідні, щоб на них можна було покластися.

Використання інфінітива у функції обставини супутніх умов звичайно обмежується дієсловами form, give, produce, yield. Типовий приклад: Hydrogen and oxygen combine to form water. — Водень і кисень сполучаються, утворюючи воду (з утворенням води).

Інфінітив у функції означення може вказувати на повинність, можливість чи майбутнє здійснення означеної дії. При перекладі такого інфінітива вибір відповідної форми визначається контекстом всього речення.

Порівняйте:

- 1) He is making attempts to change the situation for the better.
- 2) I had a chance to see Dr. Kimball at the 12<sup>th</sup> Symposium.
- 3) You should take part in the workshop to be held in June.
- 4) The problem to discuss next is our annual report.
- 5) The parts to be welded must be clean.

У якості смислової частини присудка інфінітив використовується у реченнях декількох різних типів.

Порівняйте:

- 1) Our task is to observe and analyze.
- 2) Your results can find various applications.
- 3) The experiment is to show the anticipated effect.
- 4) They continue to work with the metal oxides.
- 5) The book is easy to read.

Модальне значення повинності, яке може передаватися дієсловом *to be* у комплексі з інфінітивом смислового дієслова, є характерним для деяких стійких сполучень:

- 1) It is to be expected (that)... — Слід очікувати (, що) ...
- 2) It is to be noted (that) ... — Слід відмітити (, що) ...
- 3) It is to be emphasized (that) ... — Слід підкреслити (, що) ...
- 4) It is to be understood (that) ... — Слід зрозуміти (, що) ...
- 5) It is to be remembered (that)... — Слід пам'ятати (, що) ...

## Підрозділ 1.2 Інфінітивні звороти

### Зворот „For + іменник/займенник + інфінітив” (For-to-Infinitive Construction)

У поданій конструкції дія, виражена інфінітивом, співвідноситься з іменником або займенником, що вводиться прийменником *for*.

Порівняйте:

- 1) It is for you to decide. — Це ви повинні вирішувати. / Тобі вирішувати.
- 2) The first thing for me to do is to follow the instruction. — Перше, що я повинен робити, — це слідувати інструкції. / Перш за все, я повинен слідувати інструкції.
- 3) It is necessary for the samples to be kept in vacuum. — Потрібно, щоб зразки були у вакуумі. / Зразки необхідно тримати у вакуумі.
- 4) The results are too uncertain for us to rely on them. — Результати є занадто невизначеними, щоб ми могли покладатися на них.
- 5) For the experiment not to fail we must meet all the requirements. — Щоб експеримент пройшов вдало, ми повинні виконувати всі ці вимоги.

Зворот „Об’єктний відмінок з інфінітивом (Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction).

Даний англійський зворот з складним додатком (Complex Object) не має точної відповідності в українській мові і перекладається підрядним реченням із сполучниками „що”, „щоби”, або, „як”. При цьому сполучник ставиться відразу ж після дієслова-присудка.

Порівняйте:

- 1) I want him to understand the main purpose of the project. — Я хочу, щоб він зрозумів основну мету цього проекту.
- 2) We believe them to make contributions to the next conference. — Ми вважаємо, що вони виступлять з доповідями у наступній конференції.
- 3) I heard the door bang. — Я чув, як стукнули двері.

Складний додаток такого типу можливий після розумової діяльності (consider, know, think, etc), бажання або очікування (expect, like, want, etc), чуттєвого сприйняття (feel, see, watch, etc). Перфектний інфінітив (Perfect Infinitive) у складі складного додатку виражає минулу дію; інфінітив тривалого виду (Continuous Infinitive) — дію в розвитку; пасивний інфінітив (Passive Infinitive) — дію, яка скерована на об’єкт, передуючий інфінітиву; перфектно-пасивний інфінітив (Perfect Passive Infinitive) — минулу дію, яка скерована на об’єкт, що стоїть перед інфінітивом.

Порівняйте:

- 1) We know him to have written his doctor’s thesis.
- 2) We know him to be writing a new book.
- 3) We know him to be given a prize.
- 4) We know him to have been given a very good training.

## Зворот „Називний відмінок з інфінітивом” (Subjective-with-the-Infinitive Construction)

Інфінітив в даному англійському граматичному звороті входить до складу складного присудка. Враховуючи, однак, що ця конструкція в цілому не має прямої відповідності в українській мові, зручніше репрезентувати її як випадок використання двох присудків при одному підметі. Під час перекладу ці присудки необхідно розставити відповідно нормам українського синтаксису.

Порівняйте:

- 1) Their group is known to work hard. — Відомо, що їх група багато працює. / Їх група, як відомо, багато працює.
- 2) He is said to be writing a monograph. — Кажуть, (що) він пише монографію.
- 3) Alpha-rays were found to be positively charged. — Виявилось, що альфа-промені заряджені позитивно. / Було виявлено, що альфа-промені мають позитивний заряд.

Перший присудок в даному обороті має форму пасивного стану, якщо дієслово відноситься до тих самих смислових груп, що й у попередньому інфінітивному звороті (дієслова розумової діяльності і мовлення, бажання та очікування, чуттєвого сприйняття; див. вище). Приклад: *She is expected to come in time.*

У формі активного стану в звороті „Називний з інфінітивом” використовуються дієслова: *seem, appear* — здаватися; *prove, turn out* — виявлятися; *happen, chance* — випадково опинятися. Типовим також є вживання словосполучень: *be likely* — вірогідно, ймовірно; *be unlikely, be not likely* — малоймовірно, навряд чи; *be sure, be certain* — безсумнівно, певне.

Порівняйте:

- 1) She seems to be a good doctor.
- 2) They seem to have found a true decision.
- 3) You appeared to be right in the end.
- 4) He happened to have visited that place before.
- 5) This approach proved (to be) fruitful.
- 6) The transformation is likely to occur after heating.
- 7) Dr Roberts is unlikely to take part in this project.
- 8) We are sure to invite them to the seminar.

- 9) The historical shortages of large animal food, of manpower, and of wood proved beneficial for humankind in the long run.

**Примітка 2.** В англійській мові спостерігається стійка тенденція — не використовувати інфінітив *to be* після дієслова *prove* у подібних конструкціях (див. вище приклади 5, 9).

На українську мову дієслово *to be* звичайно не перекладається навіть при наявності його у складі подібних англійських речень (див. вище приклади 1, 3).

**Вправа 2.** Перекладіть наступні речення, які мають інфінітив в різних реченнях і конструкціях:

- 1) Empirical knowledge was systematized in astronomy so as to make possible the prediction of future events.
- 2) Astronomical observations were used to construct a calendar.
- 3) The Greeks were the first to conceive science as a body of knowledge deducible from a limited number of principles.
- 4) In order to be a good biologist now, you have to know quite a lot of modern physics and a great deal of chemistry.
- 5) To develop the memory elements of newer computers needs a great deal of physics, but their lay-out and set-up are really pure mathematics.
- 6) The Arab period of science is said to date from the eighth century to the twelfth century.
- 7) They studied the methods that were supposed to provide the stone for the transformation of base metal into gold.
- 8) They believed that there was a terrific body of knowledge of Ancient Greeks which ought to be known and ought to be examined to see whether it could be interpreted and improved.
- 9) The controlled experiment came a good deal later and some of the first and best experiments to be discussed now were those made by Galileo.
- 10) To be more accurate, what he really did was to discover which of the laws that had seemed to mathematicians to be equally good theoretically, was the one which nature actually used.
- 11) The deeper understanding of the mechanisms of living organisms may turn out to be the most far-reaching discoveries of all.
- 12) The invention of the coiled spring was attributed at first to a young Nuremberg clockmaker, Peter Hele, in the early sixteenth century, but it is now believed to have been in existence in Italy as early as 1400.
- 13) The next few years of hard work at the Royal Institution showed Faraday to be a good scientist.

- 14) Propaganda is being made for drivers and their passengers to wear seat belts.

### THE INFINITIVE

| Infinitive         | Active             | Passive           |
|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Indefinite         | to do              | to be done        |
| Continuous         | to be doing        | —                 |
| Perfect            | to have done       | to have been done |
| Perfect Continuous | to have been doing | —                 |

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| <b>I</b>   | <b>To live</b> here is very pleasant.<br><b>It</b> is time <b>to go</b> home.<br><b>It</b> is difficult <b>for me to do</b> this.                         |
| <b>II</b>  | She is ready <b>to help</b> us.<br>I want <b>to come</b> earlier today.<br>I want you to come earlier.  |
| <b>III</b> | I need some paper <b>to write on</b> .<br>It is a nice place <b>for us to live</b> .  |
| <b>IV</b>  | I have come here (in order) <b>to talk</b> to you.<br>He was too old <b>to travel</b> any more.<br>The text is easy enough <b>for you to understand</b> . |
| <b>V</b>   | <b>She</b> is said <b>to be a famous writer</b> .<br><b>They</b> were asked <b>to come earlier</b> .<br><b>He</b> is sure <b>to come soon</b> .           |

*The Syntactical Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence are of:*

**1) the subject**

**To teach** is a very important task.

**2) the predicative**

My intention is **to get** into parliament. (*Trollope*)

**3) the object**

Leila had learned **to dance** at boarding school. (*Mansfield*)

**4) part of a compound verbal predicate**

We must not **leave** him by himself any longer. (*Dickens*)

**5) part of a complex object**



I never saw you **act** this way before. (*Dreiser*)

**6) the attribute**

I have nobody **to say a kind word to me**. (*Trollope*)

**7) the adverbial modifier**

I was too busy **to see** anyone. (*Wilson*)

**To pacify her**, I hold the window ajar a few seconds. (*E. Bronte*)

She nervously moved her hand towards his lips **as if to stop him**.  
(*Dickens*)

**8) parenthesis**

**To speak the truth**, I have been a little troubled, but it is over. (*Dickens*)

## THE EXERCISES

Ex.1. Read and translate the sentences and state what kinds of Infinitives are used in them (Active or Passive, Indefinite, Continuous or Perfect):

1. There is nothing to be done. 2. You'll have to attend preparatory courses to be able to enter the university. 3. He is said to have left school. 4. What is your opinion about the steps to be taken in order to help the pupils in their studies? 5. They must be arguing about the right occupation to choose. 6. To teach is a responsible task. 7. My sister is glad to be taught English. 8. I'm sorry not to have helped you. 9. It seems to have been raining since the very morning. 10. They are glad to have been taught by such outstanding teachers. 11. I'm sure very soon I shall be sorry not to have spoken with you about it. 12. When she felt worse, she was sorry not to have consulted the doctor. 13. I know that when I return to town in autumn, my friend is sure to be working at her thesis. 14. Our teacher is glad to be teaching such clever students. 15. She is said to be writing a new book.

Ex. 2. Make up sentences with the given word constructions:

*Model:* to meet them so often.

I am happy to meet them so often.

It is pleasant to meet them so often,

to be seen off by my friends;

to have met him at the station;

to invite nice people to dinner;

to be walking along this shady alley;

to be invited to an evening-party;

to be studying for the medical profession;

to have been walking all the morning before breakfast;  
to be taught by this outstanding teacher;

Ex. 3. Supply the appropriate form of the Infinitive for the verb given in brackets:

Why didn't you come yesterday? I am sorry (to wait for) you for the whole evening. I intended (to show) you my collection of snapshots (моментальні фотографії). They are said (to be) rather good. Tomorrow I shall be busy: I expect (to read) for the examination all day long. The examination is very difficult. Our students are very glad (to give) consultations. I'm so glad (to give) the necessary explanations at the last consultation.

Ex. 4. Answer the questions:

*Model:* What's the best way to master a foreign language?  
The best way to master a foreign language is to speak it as much as possible.

1. What's your favourite occupation? 2. What are your plans for the summer? 3. What's the young people's favourite entertainment? 4. What's the best way to preserve one's health up to old age? 5. What's your purpose of learning English? 6. What's the best way to become a good football player?

Ex. 5. Define the function of the Infinitive:

1. "Are you ready to go, David?" (*Dickens*) 2. They spent their honeymoon looking for a place to live. (*Carter*) 3. "I haven't anything more to say." (*Dreiser*) 4... his voice began to tremble slightly ... (*Dreiser*) 5. "He had to shoot the man to save his own life..." (*Galsworthy*) 6.... I begged and prayed my aunt... to befriend and protect me, for my father's sake. (*Dickens*) 7. It would be dishonest of me to leave the cannon foundry to my son. (*Shaw*) 8. It is very clever of you to have found me out. (*Shaw*) 9. We are the only people in the world to know... (*Du Maurier*) 10. ... I was surprised to find my hand trembling. (*Braine*) 11. "I don't shut myself up in my room to cry." (*Du Maurier*) 10. There will be time to find some better place for him in the meanwhile. (*Dickens*)

Ex. 6. Point out the Objective-with-the Infinitive Constructions. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian:

1. We knew him to be a clever student. 2. I heard my little sister to play the piano. 3. The mother expected her son to come in time. 4. I expect my book to be returned tomorrow. "I expect you to appear in the drawing-room every night." (*Bronte*). 6. I hate people push in trams and buses. She could not bear

anyone to see her grief. (*Greene*). 7. ... "Why didn't you make me talk about it and get it off my heart?" (*Wilson*) 8. She watched him sit down on the wooden chair by the door. (*Carter*) 9. I intended you to accompany us, Blanche. (*Shaw*)

Ex. 7. Substitute the Objective-with-the Infinitive Construction for the subordinate clause.

*Model:* They supposed that the man was the captain of the steamer.

They supposed the man to be the captain of the steamer.

1. They expected that I should come soon. 2. We saw that they were looking the catalogue through. 3. Do you know that he is a good specialist in heart diseases? 4. I don't like when people behave like that. 5. She thought that he was well-read in history. 6. They found that report was rather interesting. 7. I consider that he is very clever. 8. He expects that their team will win the game. 9. I believe that he is one of the most outstanding composers of our time.

Ex. 8. Point out the Subjective Infinitive Constructions. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian:

1. He is known to speak English well. 2. She is said to work much. 3. My father is considered to have made an extraordinary discovery. 4. This man is believed to have achieved much in the field of science. 5. She is sure to come. 6. He didn't seem to have heard the news. 7. My friend happened to be at home. 8. She didn't prove to be a well-read person. 9. The mother is certain to return soon. 10. She is not likely to do it.

Ex. 9. Point out the for-Infinitive Constructions; define their functions:

1. It is time for them to come. 2. This is for me to decide. 3. The first thing for you to do is to ring him up. 4. He is anxious for his son to succeed. 5. It was necessary for her to leave. 6. The question was too difficult for me to decide at once. 7. It had long been physically impossible for Swithin to start. (*Galsworthy*) 8. ... it would be impossible for him to discover her in such a throng. (*Cronin*) 9. It was for him a surprising thing to do. (*Galsworthy*) 10. He paused for me to show my ignorance again. (*Greene*) 11. It is natural for you to think that money governs England. (*Shaw*) 12. She held out the paper for me to see. (*Du Maurier*)

Ex. 10. Insert *TO* before the Infinitive where required. Translate into Ukrainian:

- 1) She could not help but... feel a little choked for breath. (*Dreiser*)
- 2) Do you think I plan ... spend the rest of my life in the same situation? I would rather ... die! (*Monsarrat*)
- 3) They ought... have asked my advice. They ought... have. (*Snow*)

- 4) I've got nothing ... do but... talk, talk. (*Greene*)
- 5) I would ... die sooner than ... ask him another penny. (*Shaw*)
- 6) But Elfride knew Mrs. Jethway ... be her enemy, and ... hate her. (*Hardy*)
- 7) Then why not... try ... save yourself? (*Shaw*)
- 8) She opened the iron gateway and bade me ... enter. (*Maugham*)
- 9) The key of the door below was now heard in the lock, and the door was heard ... open and close. (*Dickens*)
- 10) She felt herself... be tall and slim and fresh. (*Murdoch*)
- 11) I felt my blood ... freeze. (*Cain*)
- 12) Tommy really does nothing but... propose to me. (*Wilde*)
- 13) I thought that I had better ... try ... speak openly myself. (*Snow*)
- 14) Arthur could not but... glance at Daniel Doyce in the ensuing silence. (*Dickens*)
- 15) Why not... write to her? (*Hardy*)

Ex. 11. State the function of the Infinitive. Translate into Ukrainian:

- 1) The floor of the forest was soft to walk on ... (*Hemingway*)
- 2) He was a man to attract immediate sympathy. (*Maugham*)
- 3) But the heat of the afternoon was, to say the least, oppressive. (*Salinger*)
- 4) His age was difficult to guess. (*Wilson*)
- 5) I awoke a little after sunrise to find Evan gone. (*Hansford Johnson*)
- 6) Truth to tell, he wanted to say a great deal. (*Dreiser*)
- 7) She's a spoiled child not to be trusted. (*Galsworthy*)
- 8) Her large eyes were of a blue so pale as to be almost white. (*Murdoch*)
- 9) To lie is not my custom. Too much complication and uncomfot. (*Baum*)
- 10) Nobody asked you to come out here. I didn't ask you to stay. I told you to go while it was daylight. (*Faulkner*)
- 11) ... the next thing to be done is to move away from this house. (*Eliot*)
- 12) She makes a gesture as if to touch him. (*Shaw*)
- 13) Indeed, she had nowhere to go. (*Murdoch*).
- 14) To begin with, Mrs. Anderson is a pleasanter person to live with than Mrs. Dudgeon. (*Shaw*)
- 15) The heat and dust were enough to strangle you. (*Cain*)

Ex. 12. Point out the Infinitive Attributes. Translate into Ukrainian:

- 1) I have a word to say to my daughter. (*Shaw*)
- 2) There was no moment to lose. (*Dreiser*)
- 3) There is no time to be-lost. (*Wilde*)
- 4) Davy was never one to promise and not keep his word. (*Llewellyn*)
- 5) He was the first to speak again. (*Hardy*)

- 6) I promise you there's nothing to fear. (*Maugham*)
- 7) I won, but it's no victory to be proud of. (*Wilson*)
- 8) We came into Spezia looking for a place to eat. (*Hemingway*)
- 9) I have dreadful news to break to her. (*Dickens*)
- 10) One should always have something sensational to read in the train. (*Wilde*)
- 11) Haviland was really someone to admire. (*Wilson*)

## ЧАСТИНА II. ДІЄПРИКМЕТНИК

Дієприкметник — це неособова форма дієслова, яка разом із властивостями дієслова має властивості прикметника або прислівника. В англійській мові розрізняють перший дієприкметник (прикметник теперішнього часу — Participle I, Present Participle) і другий дієприкметник (дієприкметник минулого часу — Participle II, Past Participle).

Перший дієприкметник (Participle I) має форми, які передають різні значення виду (завершеного або незавершеного) і стану (активного/пасивного).

### ФОРМИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОГО ДІЄПРИКМЕТНИКА ПЕРШОГО

| Forms               | Active                      | Passive                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Simple / Indefinite | asking (giving)             | being asked (being given)             |
| Perfect             | having asked (having given) | having been asked (having been given) |

**Примітка 1.** Для порівняння в дужках репрезентовані дієприкметникові форми дієслова „give” як одного з неправильних дієслів.

Другий дієприкметник (Participle II) має тільки одну форму, у неправильних дієслів співпадає з формою простого минулого часу (Past Simple, e.g. asked, developed, translated); у правильних дієслів — розрізняється в залежності від конкретного дієслова і потребує вивчення (give - gave - **given**; begin - **began** - begun; cut - cut - **cut**, etc.).

## Підрозділ 2.1. Функції дієприкметника і дієприкметникові конструкції

В залежності від граматичної функції дієприкметник входить до складу простого дієслівного присудка (див. вище таблицю видо-часових форм активного стану і таблицю видо-часових форм пасивного стану).

Як самостійний член речення дієприкметник найчастіше виступає означенням; при чому дієприкметнику (Participle I) зазвичай відповідає український дієприкметник в активному стані, який має закінчення „-уч (-юч)” або конструкція „який (яка, яке) + дієслово”, а другому дієприкметнику (Participle II) — дієприкметник у пасивному стані, який має закінчення „-ний (-тий)”.

Порівняйте:

- 1) Their group studied phenomena occurring in collision processes.
- 2) The article deals with the events accompanying solar flares.
- 3) The underlying mechanism is not easy to understand.
- 4) The presented experimental results are in full agreement with the theory.
- 5) The information collected in this review is valuable to us.
- 6) The idea advanced deserved special attention.

**Примітка 2.** Самостійною функцією першого дієприкметника (Participle I) є функція обставини, яка в українській мові властива дієприслівнику.

Порівняйте:

- 1) Thinking about this strange effect I suppose the interference of neighboring ions. — Думаючи про цей незвичний ефект, я припускаю втручання сусідніх іонів.
- 2) Rearranging the lenses of his telescope, Galileo found that he could magnify close objects. — Переставляючи лінзи у своєму телескопі, Галілей виявив, що він може збільшувати близькі предмети.
- 3) Having completed the literature review she began working with the experimental part of her thesis. — Завершивши огляд літератури, вона приступила до роботи над експериментальною частиною своєї дисертації.
- 4) Having been educated at Cambridge, he was acquainted with many outstanding physicists of his time. — Отримавши освіту в Кембріджі, він познайомився з багатьма видатними фізиками свого часу.

Деякі труднощі при перекладі на українську мову можуть становити обставинні дієприкметникові звороти із сполучниками: *when, while* —

коли; *if* — якщо; *whenever* — кожного разу, коли; *unless* — якщо ... ні; *until* — поки ... ні; *though* — хоча; *once* — коли, одного разу; наприклад: *When discussing the dangerous situation the committee members proposed to take some preventive measures.*

Оскільки дослівний переклад подібного обставинного звороту є некоректним, рекомендуються наступні варіанти:

- 1) не вживаючи сполучник, починати українське речення дієприкметником: „Обговорюючи цю небезпечну ситуацію, члени комітету ...”;
- 2) перекладати обставинний зворот віддієслівним іменником за допомогою фрази „під час”: „Під час обговорення цієї небезпечної ситуації, члени комітету...”;
- 3) добудовувати дієприкметниковий зворот до обставинного підрядного речення: „Коли члени комітету обговорювали цю небезпечну ситуацію, вони запропонували...”.

**Вправа 1.** Перекладіть наступні речення:

- 1) When exposed to light, this substance decomposes.
- 2) When subjected to ionizing radiation, these cells become dead.
- 3) When heated, this mixture expands.
- 4) Salt might glow red-hot when heated; sugar became charred when heated.
- 5) If added to the solution, that reagent changed its color.
- 6) Until grown to a big size, this fruit cannot be eaten.
- 7) Unless remained significantly cheaper than wood, coal could not compete with it.
- 8) Once established, that theory clarified the nature of inorganic molecules.
- 9) Though commonly used, the concept of word has not been given a scientific definition yet.

**Примітка 3.** В англійському науковому тексті зустрічається обставинний зворот *Unless otherwise stated / indicated / specified*, який перекладається стійким сполученням „Якщо не обговорено в особливості”. В розмовній англійській мові подібні обставинні звороти часто містять в собі прикметник або групу „прийменник + іменник”; наприклад: 1) *When young, he lived in Canada*, 2) *While at the University, he visited many of his fellow-students on vacations*; 3) *If in need, just call me*.

**Примітка 4.** Дієприкметники від дієслів *give*, *provide*, *grant*, які знаходяться на початку речення, функціонально зближуються із сполучниками умови і відповідно перекладаються: *Given* — якщо надано,

якщо мається, з урахуванням, при наявності, за умовою; *Providing / Provided* — за умовою, що, якщо тільки; *Granted* — якщо допустити. Приклади: 1) *Given the necessary parameters one can easily make a curve*; 2) *Given the 15-foot tides that sometimes accompany hurricanes, Houston's Space Center could be awash in ten years*.

Специфічні для англійської мови граматичні конструкції: „складний додаток”, „складний підмет”, що описані вище у зв'язку з інфінітивом (див. Частина І), можуть вміщувати у свій склад дієприкметник замість інфінітива.

Порівняйте:

- 1) I saw him cross the street. - I saw him crossing the street.
- 2) The UNESCO delegation is reported to have left Nigeria. - The UNESCO delegation is reported leaving Nigeria.

Особливе місце в граматиці англійського наукового тексту займає незалежний дієприкметниковий зворот або абсолютна дієприкметникова конструкція (Absolute Participle Construction). Суть цього граматичного явища полягає в тому, що дієприкметник, не утворюючи повноцінного присудка має власний підмет; увесь зворот, при цьому, відокремлюється комою від головного речення, наприклад: *My chief being on a sick leave, I had to make a decision myself* (Так як мій начальник був на лікарняному, мені довелося самому приймати рішення).

Українською мовою незалежний дієприкметниковий зворот перекладається підрядним реченням, і таким чином дієприкметник перетворюється на повний присудок, час якого визначається часом дієслова у головному реченні. Вид підрядного речення залежить від місцезрештування звороту відносно до головного речення. В початковій позиції (до коми), незалежні дієприкметникові звороти зазвичай відповідають українським підрядним реченням причини, часу або умови із сполучниками „так як”, „оскільки”, „коли”, „якщо” і ін. У кінцевій позиції (після коми), незалежні дієприкметникові звороти передають значення супутніх дій, і тоді доречно використовувати сполучники „при чому”, „а”, „і”.

**Вправа 2.** Перекладіть наступні речення:

- 1) Fuel demand rising all the time, natural gas is unlikely to oust other forms of fuel.
- 2) There **being** a great demand for firewood, coal was substituted as a power source.



- 3) The waterway coal transportation being cheaper, a network of canals was constructed.
- 4) Water **being** drawn from the ground at a rate faster than nature can replenish the supply, land is dropping. Demands for water **being** moderate, no land subsidence occurs.
- 5) Continental drift is still continuing, with individual plates traveling at rates from one-half inch to four inches per year.
- 6) The clepsydra, or water-clock, consisted of a basin with a hole, through which water flowed at a given rate, the falling level being marked with a scale of hours inside the vessel.
- 7) Polluted air is associated with various types of respiratory complains, important among these being chronic bronchitis and, probably, lung cancer. The death rate shows a marked regional difference, high rates being associated with the dirty atmosphere of the industrial cities.
- 8) According to this model, an observer standing on the surface of the balloon would see all other observers moving away from him, the velocity of their flight increasing with their distance from him.

**Примітка 5.** Незалежний дієприкметниковий зворот може вводитися прийменником *with*, який українською мовою не перекладається (див. приклад 5).

**Примітка.** Деякі незалежні дієприкметникові звороти становлять собою стійкі словосполучення, наприклад: *Other conditions being equal* — За інших рівних умов.

**Вправа 3.** Перекладіть наступні речення, які містять дієприкметники в різних функціях та конструкціях:

- 1) The rapidly growing interest and activity in brain research parallels an energetic, worldwide investigation in genetics.
- 2) The work of the neuroscientists has resulted in improved and promising new techniques.
- 3) The young Copernicus studied a little of everything, including medicine. While a student in Bologna, he worked with Professor Domenico Maria da Novara, a famous astronomer.
- 4) Michael Faraday came from a simple Yorkshire family, his father being a blacksmith, and his brother Robert working as a gas fitter.
- 5) Having taken full notes of these lectures, he copied them out in beautiful style, bound the sheets as a book, and sent the volume to Sir Humphry.
- 6) Those quasars are the most distant objects known.
- 7) When assigned to a flight crew, the astronaut really gets busy.

- 8) One of the most damaging earthquakes in modern times (1755) destroyed vast areas of Lisbon, the energy released by the earth on that occasion being something like 1,000 megatons.
- 9) Through his lenses van Leeuwenhoek actually saw blood moving through capillaries in the tail of a tadpole.
- 10) While carrying on his studies of electromagnetism, he discovered a momentary current of electricity flowed in a wire whenever a magnet approached or receded from it.
- 11) The two sciences, biochemistry (the study of the chemical reactions going in living tissues) and biophysics (the study of the physical forces and phenomena involved in living processes), merged to form a brand, new discipline — molecular biology.
- 12) The purpose of the meeting was to review the wealth of information concerning Mars and to criticize the many different theories being built on that information.
- 13) With the help of a new equipment we plan to look at the isotopes, the trace elements and the individual mineral grains, applying chemical and mineralogical techniques never before available.
- 14) The Mid-Atlantic Ridge expanding, lateral cracks called fracture zones appeared in the seabed.
- 15) According to the sagas, only fourteen ships arrived safely in Greenland, some being wrecked in passage and others being driven back to Iceland by wind and weather.
- 16) Making use of advances in seismology, scientists can now study the pattern of seismic activity before an earthquake.
- 17) Dust, when inhaled over long periods of time, can be highly dangerous.
- 18) Faced with a shortage of animal food, Paleolithic man had to move on or die off or change the basis of his economy.

## THE PARTICIPLE

### THE EXERCISES

| Participle | Intransitive Verbs | Transitive Verbs |                       |
|------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
|            |                    | Active           | Passive               |
| Present    | going gone         | Writing          | being written written |
| Past       | gone               | —                | written               |
| Perfect    | having gone        | having written   | having been written   |

*The Syntactical Functions of the Participle in the Sentence are of:*

1) *the attribute*

He picked up the **broken** pencil.

We admired the stars **twinkling** in the sky.

2) *the adverbial modifier*

**Having** reached the classroom, she became the object of many questions.  
(Collins)

This was said **as if thinking aloud**. (Gaskell)

**When questioned** Ann kept silence.

3) *the predicative*

The bag was **lost** yesterday.

The effect of her words was **terrifying**.

4) *part of a complex object*

We heard the wheels of the dog-cart **crashing** on the gravel of the drive.  
(Collins)

She has found me **unaltered**... (Collins)

5) *part of a compound verbal predicate*

Presently other footsteps were heard **crossing** the room below. (Hardy)

6) *parenthesis*

**Generally speaking**, I don't like boys. (Dickens)

Ex. 1. Define the forms of the Participles in bold type:

- 1) **While correcting** the students' test-papers, the teacher underlined the mistakes with a red pencil.
- 2) **Being corrected** by the teacher regularly, the exercises are very useful to the students.
- 3) **Having corrected** the test-papers, the teacher returned them to the students.
- 4) **Having been corrected** by the teacher yesterday, the students' test-papers will be returned to them today.

Ex 2. Translate into Ukrainian. State what forms of Participles are used in the sentences:

1. Is this seat taken? 2. The man standing at the door helped the old woman to get off the bus. 3. Seeing that he was late he took a taxi. 4. What is this instrument used for? 5. Watches and cameras made in Japan are very popular all over the world. 6. Taking the child by the hand she hurried to the kindergarten. 7. Having received a letter, I usually answer it at once. 8. While preparing for an examination, he always studies in the reading-hall.

Ex. 3. Transform the sentences according to the model:

*Model:* a) The boy who is speaking to the teacher is my best friend.  
The boy speaking to the teacher is my best friend.

1. The little girl who is playing with a cat is my sister. 2. Her last poems that they published a month ago are very popular. 3. The woman who is waiting there is our neighbour. 4. The man who is speaking over the telephone is our new teacher.

*Model:* b) While they were travelling in America they visited New York and Chicago.  
While travelling in America they visited New York and Chicago.

1. While the pupils of our group were passing the exam in English they had to answer many questions. 2. While she was preparing dinner she listened to the music. 3. While they were watching TV they knew the latest news. 4. While they were driving to the railway station they got into a traffic jam.

*Model:* c) As Nick was very tired he couldn't finish the work in time.  
Being very tired Nick couldn't finish the work in time.

1. As he felt homesick he decided to return home. 2. As she did so she went out. 3. As I knew him well I didn't tell him the truth. 4. As she was a well-educated woman she published a lot of books.

Ex. 4. State the function of Participle I. Translate into Ukrainian:

- 1) There was a tiny smile playing about the corners of his mouth. (*Stone*)
- 2) He had a beautiful old house in Queen Anne Street, and being a man of taste he had furnished it admirably. (*Maugham*)
- 3) Having shaken hands with them, he brought his own hands together with a sharp slap. (*Priestley*)
- 4) Manuel went in, carrying his suitcase. (*Hemingway*)
- 5) While pondering this problem, I sat in the dormitory window-seat. (*Ch. Bronte*)
- 6) I am going to Rome, having friends there. (*Dickens*)

- 7) There was sunlight coming in through the shutters. (*Hemingway*)
- 8) Cecilia had heard very little being absorbed in her own reflections. (*Crawford*)
- 9) Having breakfasted, out I went. (*Ch. Bronte*)
- 10) Never having encouraged friends to drop in spontaneously, she was almost totally alone. (*Stone*)
- 11) A cold wind swept the pavement, bearing a scrap of silver paper from a chocolate box across the lamplight. (*Greene*)

Ex. 5. State the function of Participle II. Translate into Ukrainian:

- 1) He spoke, when spoken to, politely and without much relevance. (*Hansford Johnson*)
- 2) Stirred by the beauty of the twilight, he strolled away from the hotel. (*Cronin*)
- 3) All the country near him was broken and wooded. (*Aldington*)
- 4) For a moment the trio stood as if turned to stone. (*Murdoch*)
- 5) Through the dark hall, guarded by a large black stove... I followed her into the saloon. (*Mansfield*)
- 6) Miss Brodrick, though not personally well-known in the county, had been spoken well of by all men. (*Trollope*)
- 7) Prepared, then for any consequences, I formed a project. (*Ch. Bronte*)
- 8) As directed, I took the lead, almost happily. (*Salinger*)
- 9) He looked at her for a moment as though amazed at her friendliness. (*Greene*)

Ex. 6. Point out the Objective and Subjective Participial Constructions. Translate into Ukrainian:

- 1) The taxi could be seen waiting outside. (*Murdoch*)
- 2) She had the drawing-room decorated. (*Maugham*)
- 3) All the while she felt her heart beating with a vague fear. (*Eliot*)
- 4) June watched her removing with cold water the traces of emotion. (*Galsworthy*)
- 5) The darkness found him occupied with these thoughts. The darkness found Mr. and Mrs. Plornish knocking at his door. (*Dickens*)
- 6) Somewhere a long way off a telephone bell rang and a voice could be heard speaking. (*Greene*)
- 7) Get your things packed. (*Cronin*)
- 8) The two men were heard descending. (*Dickens*)
- 9) Two days later she heard sleigh bells coming up the drive. (*Stone*)

- 10) She averted her eyes each time she found herself being stared at. (*Caldwell*)
- 11) She heard the musicians tuning up in the back parlour. (*Stone*)

Ex. 7. Point out the Absolute Participial Constructions. Translate the sentences into Ukrainian:

- 1) She sat on the steps, with her bare arms crossed upon her knees. (*Wilson*)
- 2) Admired her, with love dead as a stone. (*Hansford Johnson*)
- 3) Catherine looked at me all the time, her eyes happy. (*Hemingway*)
- 4) He stood shamefully hesitating, the strength of his resolution exhausted in his words. (*Greene*)
- 5) With the watch in her hand she lifted her head and looked directly at him, her eyes calm and empty as two holes. (*Faulkner*)
- 6) With Lowell closely watching, he slowly removed a paper and spread it carefully on his desk. (*Lindsay*)
- 7) The door of the opposite parlour being then opened, I hear some voices. (*Dickens*)
- 8) They lived the life of normal suburban children, school and holidays passing in a gentle rhythm. (*Shule*)
- 9) The concert over, the lottery ... came next. (*Ch. Bronte*)
- 10) Dinner being over, Bathsheba, for want of a better companion, had asked Liddy to come and sit with her. (*Hardy*)
- 11) Abraham too looked well, his cheeks filled out, his eyes cheerful. (*Stone*)

Ex. 8. Read the sentences, find the Participles and Participle Constructions, say what they mean:

- 1) There is a large shopping area and cultural centre with a cinema, theatre and a public library there.
- 2) The spectators watched with great interest young sportsmen doing their exercises in the centre of the stadium.
- 3) I heard somebody walking in the corridor.
- 4) Where did you have your coat made?
- 5) We are going to have our luggage weighed.
- 6) He felt his face turning red.
- 7) She found Dinny sitting by an old sundial in front of a bed of delphiniums.
- 8) It seems to me so shocking to see the precious hours of a man's life... being wasted in mere brutish sleep. (*Jerome K. Jerome*)
- 9) When I came home in the afternoon, and saw the bottles drawn up in a square on the pantry-floor, they looked so numerous ... that I was absolutely frightened at them. (*Dickens*)

- 10) "I didn't want them writing home..." (Galsworthy)
- 11) And in the slight pause the young Nickolas was heard saying gently and Violet (his third) was taking lessons in pastel... (Galsworthy)
- 12) He was represented as being completely under the domination of his wife. (Curtis)
- 13) And then she was gone, with Eddie following... (Mansfield)
- 14) "I'd like to stay," Celia said hoarsely, fear gripping at her heart. (Abrahams)
- 15) The old man sat silent, his head bent, his hands dangling helplessly over his withered knees. Then he rose, the young man helping him... (Lessing)
- 16) A chapter having been read through twice, the books were closed and the girls examined. (Ch. Bronte)
- 17) It's nearly over now, he thinks, his mind working with an exhausted clarity. (Sommerfield)
- 18) It being Saturday night, I found the landlord looking rather grimly at these records. (Dickens)
- 19) Maggie had started up and sat down again, with her heart beating violently... (Eliot)
- 20) Ferse had ceased to gesticulate, he was standing, with his arms crossed and his bare head bent. (Galsworthy)
- 21) With Mrs. Danvers gone, I should learn bit by bit to control the house. (Du Maurier)

### ЧАСТИНА ІІІ. ГЕРУНДІЙ

Герундій (Gerund) — це неособова дієслівна форма, яка об'єднує властивості дієслова із властивостями іменника. У граматичній системі англійської мови герундій ближче до іменника ніж інфінітив, — герундій позначає упредметнений процес (*coming* — прихід, прибуття; *entering* — вступ; *getting* — отримання; *taking* — взяття etc.). В українській та російській мовах герундія, як граматичного явища, не існує; аналогами йому виступають віддієслівні іменники, які або представлені, або не представлені у словниковому складі.

Форми англійського герундія співпадають з формами першого дієприкметника.

## ФОРМИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОГО ГЕРУНДІЯ

| Forms               | Active                      | Passive                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Simple / Indefinite | Asking (giving)             | being asked (being given)             |
| Perfect             | having asked (having given) | having been asked (having been given) |

**Примітка 1.** Для порівняння в дужках представлені герундіальні форми дієслова *give* як одного з неправильних дієслів.

Незважаючи на ідентичність форм, герундій (Gerund) і дієприкметник перший (Participle I) мають декілька визначальних ознак.

Дієслівна форма із закінченням **-ing** є герундієм, а не дієприкметником, якщо перед нею знаходиться прийменник, іменник у присвійному відмінку або присвійний займенник. Приклади: *on coming home; Dad's coming home; his coming home*.

Герундій відрізняється від дієприкметника за синтаксичними функціями: він може бути в реченні не тільки означенням або обставиною, подібно першому дієприкметнику, але і підметом або додатком.

Приклади використання герундія у різних синтаксичних функціях:

- 1) I like to work in the reading room, (означення)
- 2) One can learn a lot by reading, (обставина)
- 3) My coming was a surprise to her. (підмет)
- 4) She was surprised at my coming, (додаток).

Українською мовою герундій можна перекласти віддієслівним іменником, інфінітивом, дієприслівником. Якщо ці варіанти не підходять, застосовують описовий переклад, при чому герундій часто стає присудком українського підрядного речення, наприклад: *My coming home so early was a surprise to them*. — Те, що я прийшов додому так рано, було для них несподіванкою.

Переклад такого виду зазвичай використовується для складних форм герундія: перфектних, пасивних, перфектно-пасивних.

Порівняйте:

- 1) I am fond of giving presents. — Я люблю дарувати подарунки.
- 2) I am fond of being given presents. — Я люблю, коли мені дарують подарунки.



- 3) You are responsible for having given him that job. — Ви відповідальні за те, що дали йому цю роботу.
- 4) I am sorry for having been given such a small scholarship. — Шкода, що мені дали таку маленьку стипендію.

Герундій у сполученні із залежними словами, що позначають суб'єкт дії, утворює герундіальні звороти наступного типу: 1) *Dr Blume's being elected chairman...*; 2) *His being invited to the conference ...*; 3) *This device being suitable for many purposes ...*, etc. Такі звороти зазвичай перекладаються підрядними реченнями із сплучником „що” і передуючим йому займенником „те”, наприклад: „Те, що доктора Блюма обрали головою, ... і т.д.”.

**Примітка 2.** Існує низка стійких сполучень, після яких вживається герундій:

- 1) cannot help (doing) ... — (я) не можу не (робити) ...
- 2) It is worth ... — варто ...
- 3) It is worth while ... — варто ...
- 4) It is no good ... — не варто, даремно...
- 5) It is no use ... — не має сенсу...
- 6) Would you mind (doing)... — (Зробіть), будь ласка, ...
- 7) Would you mind my (doing) ... — Дозвольте мені (зробити) ...

**Примітка 3.** Поряд із герундієм і першим дієприкметником, закінчення -*ing* мають деякі англійські прикметники (*interesting, fascinating, etc*) і деякі англійські іменники (*beginning, building, feeling, meaning, etc*). Останні відрізняються від герундія тим, що вживаються з артиклями і утворюють форму множини (*a/the building, buildings*).

**Вправа 1.** Перекладіть наступні речення, які містять герундій:

- 1) By heating certain types of stone with charcoal copper was produced before 3000 B.C.
- 2) This is not a question of applying scientific discoveries, but of devising a plan for science that would combine research with its application in such a way that the whole moves forward.
- 3) More wood was used in baking the bricks for a building or in forging an iron container than in constructing the building or container out of wood itself.
- 4) Less remote is the chance of a comet's head crashing into Earth.
- 5) Some climatologists suggest that dust and other particles released into the atmosphere as a result of farming and fuel burning may be blocking more and more sunlight from reaching and heating the surface of the earth.

- 6) Learning how to survive in the jungle or the desert may seem out of place in training for space flight.
- 7) One group of substances — for example, salt, lead, water — remained basically unchanged after being heated.
- 8) On being heated, this material turned into a white substance.
- 9) Finding the key to the mysteries of the brain could lead to better ways of treating psychoses and neuroses.
- 10) After a year of running errands, delivering newspapers, shop-sweeping and window-cleaning, young Michael Faraday was apprenticed as a bookbinder in the same shop.
- 11) For working out the theory of radioactive disintegration of elements, for determining the nature of alpha-particles, for devising the nuclear atom, Rutherford was awarded the 1908 Nobel Prize in chemistry
- 12) I never found that the small amount of Greek I learned was a hindrance to my acquiring some knowledge of natural philosophy.
- 13) After going down from Cambridge, Thompson went to Paris, where he studied under Professor Regnault.
- 14) No energy is entirely lost. Thompson showed it by giving instances of energy being transformed in all the major branches of physics, such as mechanics, heat, electrostatics and magnetism.
- 15) The nature of many men drives them to go where great danger can be expected, in order to become famous by doing so.

## THE GERUND

### THE EXERCISES

| Gerund     | Active         | Passive             |
|------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Indefinite | Writing        | being written       |
| Perfect    | having written | having been written |

*The Syntactical Functions of the Gerund in the Sentence are of:*

*1) the subject*

**Travelling** is a very pleasant thing.

*2) the predicative*

His hobby is **collecting** coins.

*3) part of a compound verbal predicate*

Joseph could not help **admiring** the man. (*Heyrn*)

*4) the object*

I enjoy **listening to good music**.

5) *the attribute*

I don't like the idea of **walking in the rain**.

6) *the adverbial modifier*

**Upon waking** I found myself much recovered. (*Swift*)

**After leaving** her umbrella in the hall, she entered the living-room.  
(*Cronin*)

Ex. 1. Read the sentences and say which words ending in **-ing** are Gerunds:

1. I don't like sitting in a room in such weather. 2. When will the sitting of the literary circle be held? 3. You can find the sender's address at the beginning of the letter. 4. What are you preparing for? 5. You may finish this discussion after my leaving. 6. After finishing their homework the children went out to play. 7. The telephone is ringing. 8. What do you mean by coming to the lesson without reading the story? 9. On every floor of the hotel there are rooms for washing. 10. They enjoyed sitting in the sun and bathing in the river. 11. There is no hope of our getting home before 7 o'clock. 12. He returned home after a year's absence, it was a happy meeting.

Ex. 2. Define the forms of the Gerund in the sentences. Translate into Ukrainian:

- 1) I like inviting friends to my house.
- 2) The mother got angry seeing such a great disorder.
- 3) She was proud having seen this famous writer.
- 4) I've no objections to being asked about it.
- 5) She's quite sure of having asked him about his travel.
- 6) I do not like being attracted. (*Shaw*)
- 7) Soames had the peculiar feeling of having overdone his own honesty. (*Galsworthy*)
- 8) At every school she went she learned drawing, besides being taught by her father at home. (*Wyllarde*)
- 9) It is historically true. I loathe having to admit it. (*Shaw*)
- 10) It's no good trying to keep him here. (*Aldridge*)
- 11) She kept on laughing at Father. (*Mansfield*)
- 12) She stopped crying, looked up, said nothing. (*Galsworthy*)

Ex. 3. Define the syntactical function of the Gerund and Gerundial Constructions in the sentences:

- 1) Travelling is very pleasant.
- 2) My hobby is collecting stamps.

- 3) My friend is fond of swimming.
- 4) His little sister likes singing with him.
- 5) You can hardly help blaming him severely, (*Eliot*)
- 6) Suddenly the telephone began ringing in the little room behind the library.  
(*Du Maurier*)
- 7) After leaving college he became Private Secretary to Lord Binkie.  
(*Thackeray*)
- 8) You show your enjoyment by crying. (*Wyllarde*)
- 9) You won't recover without taking medicine.
- 10) Moose waited without thinking anything at all. (*Aldridge*)
- 11) I am damning myself for being such a fool. (*Shaw*)
- 12) He told me he needed them for storing chemicals. (*Greene*)
- 13) And suddenly... she got up and began to walk about the room... What good in thinking? (*Galsworthy*)
- 14) Nobody can go on living without some belief. (*Greene*)
- 15) He greeted me noisily, but I cut him short by giving him the telegram.  
(*Snow*)
- 16) Without putting anything into words, they bade each other farewell.  
(*Wilson*)
- 17) I remember laughing aloud, and the laugh being carried by the wind away from me. (*Du Maurier*)
- 18) He felt better for having written the letter. (*Cronin*)
- 19) She seemed a little self-conscious now and she avoided meeting his eyes.  
(*Wilson*)
- 20) At night... I would imagine him going up my stairs, knocking at my door, sleeping in my bed. (*Greene*)
- 21) It is awfully hard work doing nothing. (*Wilde*)
- 22) After washing his heavy stone cup and tin plate..., he stretched himself wearily on the bed. (*Dreiser*)
- 23) She enjoyed giving parties. (*Stone*)
- 24) He meant to begin his investigation by seeing the church. (*Galsworthy*)
- 25) But outside it kept on raining. (*Hemingway*)

Ex. 4. Insert the correct preposition before the Gerund where required:

- 1) The other insisted ... accompanying them. (*Lessing*)
- 2) I am tired ... being old and wise. (*Greene*)
- 3) Both windows needed ... cleaning. (*Hansford Johnson*)
- 4) I didn't at all like the idea ... going to the station in the luggage cart.  
(*Maugham*)
- 5) I thought you had just been blaming me ... being neutral. (*Snow*)

- 6) He looked at me for a long time ... answering. (*Clark*)
- 7) We wouldn't mind ... being poor again. (*Hansford Johnson*)
- 8) I suppose nothing is gained ... delaying. (*Maugham*)
- 9) I was torn between the fear ... being in the way. (*Maugham*)
- 10) I wish I'd never told you the truth, but it's no use ... denying it. (*Braine*)
- 11) If you won't tell me what's wrong, what's the use ... my being here?  
(*Braine*)

Ex. 5. Insert the appropriate form of the Gerund:

- 1) There is vivid happiness in merely ... alive. (to be) (*Coppard*)
- 2) The attempt is at least worth ... (to make) (*Collins*)
- 3) No woman looks her best after ... up all night. (to sit) (*Shaw*)
- 4) I'm tired of ... like a silly fat lamb. (to treat) (*Coppard*)
- 5) She kept on ..., her voice low and controlled. (to talk) (*Braine*)
- 6) I know everyone who's worth ... (to know) (*Maugham*)
- 7) I just couldn't stand ... away from you any longer. (to be) (*Stone*)
- 8) I remember ... him with her and Mamer going away from church. (to see)  
(*Elliot*)
- 9) The house wanted ... (to do up) (*Galsworthy*)
- 10) "Or, sir," cried the man, gruffly, "where's the use of... of Bloody Mary...?  
(to talk) (*Dickens*)
- 11) The answer was so long in ... (to come) (*Dickens*)
- 12) He apologized to Hooker for ... so late. (to be down) (*Priestley*)

## ТРЕНУВАЛЬНИ ТЕСТИ

### TESTS FOR SELF-CONTROL

#### Complex Object / (Causative Verbs) / Make / Let

Test 1 Tick off the variant that is impossible in English.

1. A) I saw her entering the room.  
B) I saw her enter the room.  
C) I saw her to enter the room.
2. A) Many people found him be innocent.  
B) Many people found him innocent.  
C) Many people found him to be innocent.
3. A) When came nearer I heard somebody playing the piano.  
B) When came nearer I heard somebody play the piano.  
C) When came nearer I heard somebody to play the piano.
4. A) Do you want to make me some tea?  
B) Do you want me make you some tea?  
C) Do you want some tea made for you?  
D) Do you want me to make you some tea?
5. A) They watched him getting off the bus and crossing the road.  
B) They watched him get off the bus and cross the road.  
C) They watched him to get off the bus and cross the road.
6. A) I don't consider him be an honest man.  
B) I don't consider him an honest man.  
C) I don't consider him to be an honest man.
7. A) He expected us to come on Sunday.  
B) He expected us come on Sunday.  
C) He expected that we would come on Sunday.
8. A) Would you like them change their mind?  
B) Would you like them to change their mind?  
C) Would you like to change their mind?

- Test 2 Right / wrong – complex object / let / have. Find the mistake and correct it.

B) wrong

- 102

19. Have you ever seen a television throw through the window?
20. I heard his name mentioned several times.
21. The Greens always let their children to see the New Year in with them.

Test 3 Gerund / Infinitive (1). Write what each word or expression is followed by.

A) to + verb                      B) verb + -ing                      C) both are possible

- |                 |                  |                |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. want         | 2. would like    | 3. sorry       |
| 4. decide where | 5. begin         | 6. get used to |
| 7. continue     | 8. pleased       | 9. regret      |
| 10. suggest     | 11. love         | 12. start      |
| 13. used        | 14. mind         | 15. go on      |
| 16. enjoy       | 17. remember     | 18. suspect of |
| 19. hate        | 20. would prefer | 21. would love |

Test 4 Gerund / Infinitive (2). Put the verb in brackets into correct form, gerund or infinitive.

A) to + verb                      B) verb + -ing

1. I'm thinking of (go) to Brazil.
2. You cannot live without (do) such stupid things.
3. He isn't good at (drive) his car.
4. Try to avoid (lose) your temper.
5. He seems (know) everything about it.
6. It's no use (cry) over spilt milk.
7. Would you mind (repeat) your threat?
8. You should practice (say), "Red little lorry, yellow little lorry."
9. It's useless (argue) with him. He won't listen to any reason.
10. They were advised (take) a packed lunch.
11. Do you think it's worth (see) this film?
12. If you want (lose) weight, try (eat) less.
13. It's forbidden (smoke) here.
14. I'm not keen on (work) late.
15. I'm not very fond of (shop).
16. He managed (calm) her by promising to return soon.
17. Mary is crazy about (take) photographs.
18. In Arabia the usual way of (travel) is by camel.



19. You needed (add) some more sugar to that.

Test 5 Gerund / Infinitive (3). Put the verb in brackets into correct form, gerund or infinitive.

1. Why don't you stop (watch) TV? I don't think it's harmless.
2. Please try (come) a little bit earlier next time.
3. I don't remember (see) Tom.
4. I've forgotten (buy) cheese. Let's go without it.
5. She regrets (tell) you that lie about John.
6. I don't think this work needs (correct).
7. They stopped (discuss) where to go now.
8. If you want to have a lot of money, try (rob) a bank.
9. The boys went on (look for) the money they'd lost.
10. I'll never forget (visit) Paris.
11. After describing the situation in general, he went on (talk) about details.
12. She regrets (say) she won't come to you.
13. Shall I help you (carry) that box?
14. Did you remember (say) good-bye to everybody?
15. He didn't need (be reminded) about his promise.
16. We can't help laughing (look) at them.

Test 6 Participle I / Participle II. Put the Participle in the form suitable for the noun.

A) Participle I (doing)

B) Participle II (done)

- |                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. (grow) interest       | 2. a (complicate) explanation |
| 3. an (excite) child     | 4. a (terrify) experiment     |
| 5. (worry) problem       | 6. (well-pay) job             |
| 7. a (pass) bus          | 8. a (burn) barn              |
| 9. an (excite) story     | 10. a (steal) car             |
| 11. (fly) fish           | 12. (run) water               |
| 13. a (freeze) lake      | 14. (blind) light             |
| 15. a (break) heart      | 16. a (die) soldier           |
| 17. a (cheer) crowd      | 18. a (swim) lesson           |
| 19. a (destroy) church   | 20. (longplay) records        |
| 21. the (follow) chapter |                               |

Test 7 Participle I / Participle II. Choose the form of the Participle in each sentence.

A) Participle I

B) Participle II

1. I must have the mixer (fixing, fixed).
2. I don't find this story (amusing, amused).
3. My room is a mess: I really must get it (tidying, tidied) up.
4. I would stay at home after such a (tiring, tired) day.
5. Uncle Frank has a gentle old horse (naming, named) Pete on his farm.
6. Can you smell something (burning, burned)?
7. He opened the letter with (shaking, shaken) fingers.
8. She had rather a (pleasing, pleased) look on her face.
9. Deeply (shocking, shocked) I left them.
10. When (answering, answered) your question yesterday I forgot this fact.
11. He walked along the road with his collar (turning, turned) up, hands in pockets.
12. I didn't enjoy the party because I was (boring, bored) there.
13. Why not throw away the (breaking, broken) umbrella we are not likely to repair it.
14. She didn't pay any attention to the (ringing, rung) telephone.
15. Don't you think your hair needs (cutting, cut)?
16. Can you think of the name of an animal (beginning, begun) with "B"?

### III. УМОВНИЙ СПОСІБ

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

#### СПОСОБИ ДІЄСЛОВА (MOODS)

В англійській мові, як і в українській, є три способи дієслова: дійсний (the Indicative Mood), умовний (the Subjunctive Mood) і наказовий (the Imperative Mood).

Дійсний спосіб виражає дію як реальний факт у теперішньому, минулому і майбутньому часі:

She **lives** with her mother.

Вона живе з матір'ю.

A letter **came** from them today.

Сьогодні від них прийшов лист.

I **shall go** into the garden.

Я піду в сад.

Умовний спосіб виражає дію не як реальну, а як таку, що могла б відбутися за певних умов, а також необхідну, бажану або нереальну, нездійсненну:

Oh, if I **had** but **come** last night.

О, якби я тільки прийшла вчора увечері.

В англійській мові вживаються чотири форми умовного способу: the Conditional Mood, the Suppositional Mood, Subjunctive I, Subjunctive II.

#### THE CONDITIONAL MOOD

Conditional Mood (Умовний спосіб) утворюється з допоміжних дієслів **should** і **would** та інфінітива основного дієслова без частки **to**. У першій особі вживається **should** або **would**, у другій і третій особах — **would**.

Отже, Conditional Mood за формою збігається з Future-in-the-Past дійсного способу, але відрізняється від нього за значенням.

Future-in-the-Past вживається для вираження реальної дії, що була майбутньою стосовно минулого:

I knew something **would happen** today.

Я знав, що сьогодні щось трапиться.

Conditional Mood вживається для вираження дії, яка відбулася б за певних умов у теперішньому, минулому або майбутньому часі, але не відбудеться з якихось причин:

I **should call** on him but I have

Я б зайшов до нього, але у мене

very little time.

дуже мало часу.

Conditional Mood має дві часові форми: present і past.

Present Conditional утворюється з допоміжних дієслів **should** і **would** та інфінітива основного дієслова без частки **to**, тобто за формою збігається з Future Indefinite-in-the-Past:

I (we) **should/would work**.

He (she, it you, they) **would work**.

Present Conditional виражає дію, що за певних умов могла б відбутися в теперішньому або майбутньому часі:

But for the rain we **would work**  
in the garden today.

Якби не дощ, ми працювали б  
сьогодні в саду.

I'd **buy** the watch tomorrow but  
the shop will be closed.

Я купив би годинник завтра,  
але магазин буде зачинений.

Past Conditional утворюється з допоміжних дієслів **should/would** та перфектної форми інфінітива основного дієслова, тобто за формою збігається з Future Perfect-in-the-Past:

I (we) **should/would have worked**.

He (she, it, you, they) **would have worked**.

**Примітка:** Перфектна форма інфінітива (Perfect Infinitive) утворюється з інфінітива допоміжного дієслова **to have** та дієприкметника минулого часу основного дієслова: **to have worked**.

Past Conditional виражає дію, яка за певних умов могла б відбутися в минулому, але через відсутність цих умов не відбулася:

She **would** have **bought** a watch  
but the shop was closed.

Вона купила б годинник, але  
магазин був зачинений.

## SUBJUNCTIVE II

Subjunctive II має дві часові форми: present і past.

Present Subjunctive II за формою збігається з Past Indefinite дійсного способу.

Винятком є дієслово **to be**, яке в Present Subjunctive II має форму **were** в усіх особах однини й множини:

I (he, she, it, we, you, they) **were**.

Present Subjunctive II виражає нереальну дію, що суперечить дійсності і відноситься переважно до теперішнього або майбутнього часу:

If I **saw** him **tomorrow** I should

Якби я побачив його завтра, я б

tell him about it.

If she **learned** English, I'd buy her this book.

сказав йому про це (*у мене мало надії побачити його завтра*).

Якби вона вивчала (зараз) англійську мову, я купила б їй цю книжку (*а вона вивчає французьку мову*).

Past Subjunctive II за формою збігається з Past Perfect дійсного способу:

I (he, she, it, we, you, they) had worked.

Past Subjunctive II виражає нереальну дію в минулому часі.

If I had **met** her I would have told her about it.

Якби я зустрів її, я сказав би їй про це (*зустріч не відбулася*).

## ВЖИВАННЯ CONDITIONAL MOOD I SUBJUNCTIVE II

Conditional Mood вживається у простих, складносурядних і складнопідрядних реченнях для вираження дії, яка могла б відбутися за певних умов. Ці умови можуть виражатись у цьому реченні або в сусідніх, а можуть не виражатись взагалі, але вони зрозумілі з усієї ситуації.

But for the late hour they **would stay** here longer.

Якби не пізній час, вони побули б тут довше.

(Умова виражена в цьому реченні — *якби не пізній час*.)

It's a pity I have no time. We **would play** chess.

Шкода, що я не маю часу. Ми зіграли б у шахи.

(Умова зрозуміла з попереднього речення — *якби я мав час*.)

I'd **write** him a letter but I don't know his address.

Я написав би йому листа, але не знаю його адреси.

(Умова виражена в другому простому реченні — *якби я знав його адресу*.)

Yesterday I **would have said** the same.

Вчора я сказав би те ж саме.

(Умова не виражена, але вона зрозуміла з ситуації — *якби мене запитали вчора, якби ми вчора говорили про це*.)

Conditional Mood і Subjunctive II вживаються в складнопідрядних реченнях з підрядним умовним, якщо умова малоімовірна або нездійсненна. В головному реченні вживається Conditional, а в

підрядному – Subjunctive II.

Кожна з цих форм вживається в тому часі, який вимагається за змістом.

Якщо дії головного і підрядного речень відбуваються в теперішньому або майбутньому часі, то в підрядному умовному реченні (умова) вживається Present Subjunctive II, а в головному (наслідок) — Present Conditional.

Якщо дії головного і підрядного речень відбуваються в минулому часі, то в підрядному умовному реченні вживається Past Subjunctive II, а в головному — Past Conditional:

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| If I <b>were</b> you I <b>wouldn't think</b> of it. | На вашому місці я б не думав про це. |
|---|--------------------------------------|

(Дії головного і підрядного речень відбуваються в теперішньому часі.)

|  |   |
|--|---|
| If you <b>had stayed</b> , I <b>would</b> never <b>have come</b> to you. | Якби ви залишились, я б ніколи не прийшов до вас. |
|--|---|

(Дії головного і підрядного речень відбуваються в минулому часі.)

|  |  |
|--|--|
| If he <b>had graduated</b> from the institute, he'd <b>work</b> at school. | Якби він закінчив інститут, він би працював у школі. |
|--|--|

(Дія підрядного речення відбувається в минулому часі, а дія головного — в теперішньому.)

|   |  |
|---|--|
| If you <b>were</b> not so absent minded, you <b>would not have made</b> so many mistakes. | Якби ти не був такий не уважний, ти не зробив би так багато помилок. |
|---|--|

(Дія головного речення відбувається в минулому часі, у підрядному реченні дається постійна характеристика певної особи. Саме цим і пояснюється вживання Present Subjunctive II у підрядному реченні.)

Subjunctive II вживається в простих реченнях для вираження бажаної дії або с т а н у, що суперечить дійсності:

|                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| If only he <b>looked</b> different! | Якби тільки він виглядав інакше! |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| If only it <b>could</b> always be the spring! | Якби завжди була (могла бути) весна! |
|---|--------------------------------------|

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| If you <b>had been</b> there, I should have seen you. | Якби ви були там, я б побачив вас. |
|---|------------------------------------|

Subjunctive II вживається в підрядних додаткових реченнях, якщо присудок головного речення виражений дієсловом **to wish**. У цьому

випадку Subjunctive II виражає бажану дію або стан, що суперечить дійсності.

Якщо дія підрядного речення відбувається одночасно з дією головного, в підрядному реченні вживається Present Subjunctive II, а якщо дія підрядного передуює дії головного, то в підрядному реченні вживається Past Subjunctive II:

I wish I **knew** where you are and what you are doing.

I wish I **were** only **joking**.

I wish I **had not told** you about it.

We all wished that we **had stopped** there.

Мені хотілося б знати, де ти і що ти робиш зараз.

Добре було б, коли б я лише жартував.

Шкода, що я розповів вам про це.

Ми всі жалкували, що не зупинилися там.

**Примітка:** Якщо дія підрядного речення є майбутньою стосовно дії головного, воно виражає бажання, здійснення якого мало ймовірно. У цьому разі в підрядному реченні вживаються сполучення **would** або **could** з інфінітивом:

I wish she **would come** home.

I wish you **could give** it to me.

Добре було б, коли б вона прийшла додому.

Мені хотілося б, щоб ти дав його мені.

Subjunctive II вживається в підрядних реченнях, що приєднуються до головного речення сполучниками **as if**, **as though** *наче, ніби*. Якщо дія підрядного речення одночасна з дією головного, то в підрядному реченні вживається Present Subjunctive II:

They spoke before her as if she **were** not there.

You just go out as though you **were going** for a walk.

I felt as if I **were being sent** home.

Вони розмовляли при ній, наче її там і не було.

Ви просто виходьте, ніби йдете на прогулянку.

У мене було таке відчуття, наче мене відсилають додому.

Якщо дія підрядного речення передуює дії головного, то в підрядному реченні вживається Past Subjunctive II:

He looked as if he **had never seen** me before.

Здавалося, наче він мене ніколи не бачив раніше.

**Примітка:** Якщо дія підрядного речення зі сполучником **as if, as though** є майбутньою стосовно дії головного, то в підрядному реченні вживається сполучення **would** з інфінітивом:

The sky looked as if it **would** never **clear** before morning. Небо було таким, наче воно до ранку не проясниться.

## SUBJUNCTIVE I

Subjunctive I має тільки одну форму для всіх осіб однини і множини, яка у всіх дієсловах, у тому числі **to be** і **to have**, збігається з інфінітивом без частки **to**.

| <b>to go</b>    | <b>to be</b>    | <b>to have</b>    |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| I go            | I be            | I have            |
| He (she, it) go | He (she, it) be | He (she, it) have |
| We go           | We be           | We have           |
| You go          | You be          | You have          |
| They go         | They be         | They have         |

У пасивному стані Subjunctive I має форму **be + Past Participle**: I (he, she, it, we, you, they) **be examined**.

Subjunctive I вживається для вираження **необхідної, бажаної дії**, яка може відбутись:

It is necessary that he go there at once. Необхідно, щоб він негайно пішов туди.

Subjunctive I не має часових форм — та сама форма може вживатись відносно теперішнього, минулого і майбутнього часу:

He demands (demanded, will demand) that we **be attentive**. Він вимагає (вимагав, вимагатиме), щоб ми були уважні.

## THE SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD

Suppositional Mood утворюється з допоміжного дієслова **should** (у всіх особах) та інфінітива основного дієслова без частки **to**.

Suppositional Mood має дві часові форми: present і past.

Present Suppositional утворюється з допоміжного дієслова **should** та інфінітива основного дієслова:

I (he, she, it, we, you, they) **should work**.



Past Suppositional утворюється з допоміжного дієслова **should** та перфектної форми інфінітива основного дієслова:

I (he, she, it, we, you, they) **should have gone**.

## ВЖИВАННЯ SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD I SUBJUNCTIVE I

Suppositional Mood вживається для вираження сумнівної, але необхідної, бажаної дії, що не суперечить дійсності і має відбутися згідно чийогось прохання, розпорядження, наказу тощо:

It is necessary that he **should go** there at once.      Необхідно, щоб він негайно поїхав туди.

I insist that you **should consult** a doctor.      Я наполягаю, щоб ви проконсультувалися у лікаря.

У цих значеннях вживається також Subjunctive I, але Suppositional Mood і Subjunctive I не однаково поширені в мові. В англійській мові Великої Британії переважно вживається Suppositional Mood. Subjunctive I трапляється лише в мові офіційних документів (договорів, угод тощо), у науковій і технічній літературі, а також у поезії. В американському варіанті англійської мови Subjunctive I вживається частіше.

Suppositional Mood, як і Subjunctive I, вживається в підрядних підметових реченнях, які вводяться зворотом із займенником **it**: **it is necessary** *необхідно*; **it is important** *важливо*; **it is desirable** *бажано*; **it is ordered** *наказано*; **it is demanded** *вимагається*; **it is recommended** *рекомендується* та ін.:

It is necessary that he **should pay** us a visit.      Необхідно, щоб він відвідав нас.

It was extremely important that he **remain** at school.      Було надзвичайно важливо, щоб він залишився в школі.

It is necessary that the place **be** clean.      Необхідно, щоб місце було чисте.

Suppositional Mood, як і Subjunctive I, вживається в підрядних додаткових реченнях, якщо дієслово-присудок головного речення означає наказ, прохання, вимогу, пропозицію, пораду тощо: **to order** *наказувати*; **to suggest** *пропонувати*; **to propose** *пропонувати*; **to demand** *вимагати*; **to request** *просити*; **to advise** *радити*; **to recommend** *рекомендувати* та ін.:

He only **demanded** that the man **should leave** the country at once.      Він лише вимагав, щоб цей чоловік негайно покинув країну.

Harris **proposed** that we **should**      Гарріс запропонував взяти на

**have** eggs for breakfast.

сніданок яйця.

Toward evening he looked so badly that she **suggested** that he **go** to bed.

Надвечір він мав такий поганий вигляд, що вона порадила йому лягти в ліжко.

Suppositional Mood (звідка Subjunctive I) вживається в підрядних реченнях, які вводяться сполучником **lest щоб не**:

Mary dreaded lest he **should come in**.

Мері боялася, щоб він не ввійшов.

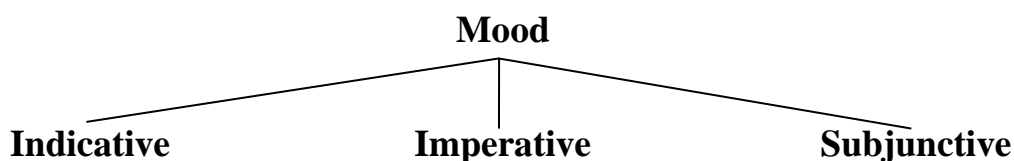
She closed the window lest the children **should catch cold**.

Вона зачинила вікно, щоб діти не застудилися.

Suppositional Mood вживається в підрядних умовних реченнях, що стосуються майбутнього часу, для підкреслення малої ймовірності припущення:

If you **should meet** her somewhere, you might travel with her.

Якби ти випадково зустрів її де-небудь, ти міг би поїхати з нею.



#### Subjunctive I (Active)

| to do           | to be           | to have           |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| I do            | I be            | I have            |
| He (she, it) do | He (she, it) be | He (she, it) have |
| We do           | We be           | We have           |
| You do          | You be          | You have          |
| They do         | They be         | They have         |

#### Subjunctive I (Passive)

be + V<sup>3</sup>

## The Suppositional Mood

should + V<sup>1</sup>

## Subjunctive II

### Present Subjunctive II

V<sup>2</sup>

to be → were

### Past Subjunctive II

had + V<sup>3</sup>

## The Conditional Mood

### Present Conditional

should + V<sup>1</sup>  
Would

### Past Conditional

should + have + V<sup>3</sup>  
would

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

### I. Subjunctive I and the Suppositional Mood

EX. 1 Make up sentences using Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood.

|   |         |      |   |
|---|---------|------|---|
| I | suggest | That | that cheerful boy (to be invited) to our company. |
|   | insist  |      | the meeting (to be held) on Wednesday.            |
|   | demand  |      | we (to put off) our meeting.                      |
|   | hope    |      | they (to settle) the whole matter.                |

EX. 2 Use the corresponding Mood form instead of the Infinitive in brackets.

1. He requested that she (to partner) him. 2. We suggest that our plan (to be turned down). 3. I suggest that my sister (to be taught) English. 4. We ask that you (to listen) to our convincing arguments. 5. They insist that the firm (to answer) within this month.

EX. 3 Complete the following sentences.

1. A new film was on and I suggested that we ... 2. The dean ordered that all the students ... 3. The teacher ordered that the pupils ... 4. It was late and the mother insisted that the children ... 5. I insist that you ... 6. It is impossible that he ... 7. I consider it natural that the man ... 8. It is surprising that the leader of the group ... 9. Should you make a discovery ... 10. Should you book a seat for the fast train ... 11. Should you sign this document ... 12. Should you be in America ... 13. Should this film be worth seeing ... 14. Should you go shopping ...

EX. 4 Fill in the blanks using the corresponding Mood form.

1. They ... that the radio-set ... put right. 2. He did not want to mention that fact lest he ... hurt my feelings. 3. ... you find this book, buy one for me. 4. It is necessary that he ... be calmed down. 5. ... you move to another flat, let me know and give me your new address. 6. ... you have this book at your disposal, give it to me for three days.

EX. 5 Analyze the use of the Suppositional Mood in the following sentences.

1. I am going down the river, and if I should see anything of the Aurora, I shall let him know ... that you are uneasy. (A. Conan Doyle)
2. He had doubtless planned beforehand that, should he slay the major, he would leave some such record upon the body as a sigh that it was not a common murder, but, from the point of view of the four associates, something in the nature of an act of justice. (A. Conan Doyle)
3. I suggested that he should get a thermometer, and a few grapes, and some bread. (Maugham)
4. I think it is rather hard that you should leave me for so long a period as half an hour. (Wilde)
5. I know how you felt about the whole visit, and I was rather fearful that you might do something violent. (Du Maurier)

## II. The Conditional Mood

Ex. 1 Make up sentences using the Conditional Mood.

|         |                        |  |
|---------|------------------------|--|
| But for | the rain               | we (to finish) the work in time.                 |
|         | their help             | they (to go) to the country next week.           |
|         | the late hour          | we (to go) to the forest yesterday.              |
|         | my friend              | he (to find) their address.                      |
|         | Your absent mindedness | you (to notice) your mistakes on the blackboard. |
|         | good health            | you (to prepare) a more interesting report.      |

EX. 2 Paraphrase the sentences using the Conditional Mood.

Model: 1) I want to go to the cinema with you but I have to take my examination in English tomorrow.

But for this examination I should go to the cinema with you.

2) She made an effort over herself and didn't faint.

But for making an effort over herself she would have fainted.

1. He helped me and I managed to find my work in time. 2. He is an experienced engineer and he gave us good advice. 3. It began to rain and we didn't reach the village in time. 4. She had a headache and didn't take part in the concert. 5. The driver was very skilled and we reached the camp at daybreak.

EX. 3 Complete the following sentences using the Conditional Mood and the words in brackets.

1. She was angry with him, otherwise she ... (to say) such offending words.
2. She must have heard about this event already otherwise she ... (to look surprised) when you told her about it.
3. They must have lost their way otherwise she ... them (to return) already.
4. Probably they are out, otherwise somebody ... (to answer the phone).
5. She had a perfect command in English, otherwise she ... (to translate) the article properly.

EX. 4 Translate the following sentences and analyse the use of the Conditional Mood.

1. I would come at once, if you were really ill. (Essex)
2. I should feel I was losing my own sister if you did this, and my mother would lose a daughter. (A. Christie)
3. When I leave tomorrow I never tell my people where I am going. If I did I

- should lose all my pleasure. (Wilde)
4. "I know, but..." She would cry, if she said any more. (Essex)
  5. Of course, I am not like him. I know that perfectly well. Indeed, I should be sorry to look like him. (Wilde)
  6. She had an absurd idea that it would be wonderful if tonight could last for ever. (Essex)
  7. It would have been terrible if any cloud had come across a friendship like ours... (Wilde)

### III. Subjunctive II

Ex. 1 USE THE CORRESPONDING MOOD FORM INSTEAD OF THE INFINITIVE IN BRACKETS:

1. If I (to be free) tomorrow, I shall join you with pleasure.
2. If your brother (to be) here now, he will be surprised at your behaviour and I am sure he would not approve of it.
3. If we (to be) not writing this exercise now I should give you my pen.
4. If it (to be raining) now, the children would not be running about in the garden.
5. If the students (to work) regularly they will pass their exams.

EX. 2 MAKE UP SENTENCES USING SUBJUNCTIVE II:

|      |         |           |                               |
|------|---------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| He   | looked  |           | he (to be) pleased immensely. |
| She  |         | as if     | they (to enjoy) the film.     |
| It   | behaved |           | they (to understand)          |
| We   | seemed  | as though | she (to be) a child of six.   |
| You  | felt    |           | she (to be) young again.      |
| They |         |           | they (to make up) their mind. |

EX.3 MAKE UP SENTENCES USING SUBJUNCTIVE II:

|                 |                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
|                 | we (to know) this rule.              |
| It is time that | you (to tell) him the truth.         |
|                 | you (to look upon) him as a grown-up |

EX. 4 USE THE CORRESPONDING MOOD FORM INSTEAD OF THE INFINITIVE IN BRACKETS

1. She (to tell) you nothing even if you (to ask) her.
2. They (not to come) have today even if you (to wire) them.
3. The boy (to go) to school even if he (to be)

ill). 4. I (to ring up) you even if I (to have) little time. 5. He (not to go) to a holiday camp with you even though the weather (to be) fine.

**EX. 5 READ THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES AND ANALYSE THE USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE II.**

1. They walked together just as if they had done it scores of times before. (Essex)
2. Lord Henry struck a light on a dainty silver case, and began to smoke a cigarette with a self-conscious and satisfied air, as if he had summed up the world into phrase. (Wilde)
3. Miss Pettigow must be a nervous creature, in spite of her efficient air, for she jumped as though she had been shot. (A. Christie)
4. He turned away as if he had never noticed her. (Essex)
5. "So I have murdered Sibyl Vane," said Dorian Gray, half to himself, "murdered her as surely as if I had cut her little throat with a knife." (Wilde)
6. The room looked as if it had not been lived in for years. (Wilde)
7. His face was terribly sad, his eyes did not look at her, but away from her, as though he still could not speak of this without acute pain. (Essex)
8. Even if she were there I would be unlikely to find her. (A. Christie)

**Miscellaneous Exercises on the Use of  
the Subjunctive and Conditional Mood**

**EX. 1. COMPLETE THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES.**

1. It was cold and our mother advised that ... 2. It was raining. I feared lest ... 3. We did not know where to go in summer and he advised that ... 4. It was getting dark and my friend suggested that ... 5. The concert was very interesting. I wish you ... 6. He got wet to the bone, I fear lest ... 7. The tickets were hard to get, he insisted that ... 8. They were very tired after work, so I suggested that they...

**EX. 2. COMMENT ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AND MODAL VERBS.**

1. If I only waited there for a minute or two, the doctor would be conducted to his patient's room. (Collins)
2. "If only they had made me the Duke," he could not help thinking... (Bates)
3. It seems to me, at this distance of time, as if my unfortunate studies generally took this course. (Dickens)
4. So! They were talking of Wilfred. How find out why ... and suddenly she thought, "Even if I could, I wouldn't..." (Galsworthy)
5. Oh! What would not I give to see him! (Austen)

6. Why should Maxim dislike Rebecca's cousin? (Du Maurier)
7. For a while Eric said nothing. "You know, if you hadn't broken off, you might have been married to him by now." (Wilson)
8. "If Miss Dinny could take him off just now, on a tour of the Scotch Highlands ... it would save a lot of vexation." (Galsworthy) -

**EX. 3 ANALYSE THE FORM OF THE VERB IN THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES. TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN.**

1. I wished I had never heard the rumour about Phat Diem, or that the rumour had dealt with any other town. (Greene)
2. One always spoke of her like that in the third person as though she were not there. (Greene)
3. It was as if a bomb had exploded into the office. Smith, the red-faced man, looked as though his veins would burst. (Cronin)
4. What is the matter, Uncle Jack? Do look happy! You look as if you had a toothache, and I have got such a surprise for you. (Wilde)
5. Even if she were there I would be unlikely to find her. (A. Christie)
6. I wished I had the courage to call him back and say "You are right. I did see Pyle the night he died." (Greene)
7. Mrs. Cheveley, I think it is right to tell you frankly that, had I know who you really were, I should not have invited you to my house last night. (Wilde)
8. He again began to draw and write with a sort of remoteness, as if he were a long way off. (Galsworthy)
9. "The roses are in bloom now. I wish I had brought you some." (Du Maurier)
10. I wished I had kept my candle burning; the night was drearily dark. (Bronte)
11. ... I think it is high time that Mr. Bunbury made up his mind whether he was going to live or to die. (Wilde)
12. It was as though I had blown a bubble in the air and stood by to watch it dance. (Du Maurier)
13. Indeed, if anybody were capable of doing so, it would have given him the reputation for the sense of humour. (Greene)
14. "I wish she were ill," he rejoined, "when you are ill you shouldn't act." (Wilde)
15. Sherlock Holmes drew a long breath, and wiped the perspiration from his forehead. "I should have more faith," he said. (A. Conan Doyle)
16. And if it hadn't been for Mamma, I don't know what I would have done. (Dreiser)
17. "Go," he said, "would you be very disappointed if we didn't get one of



these houses?" (Carter)

18. What if Irene were to take it into her head to leave Soames? (Galsworthy)

19. "That's a lie," she said, "who else told him, if you didn't?" (DU Maurier)

20. "You look," said Dinny, ... "as if you had been in the sun." (Galsworthy)

### **The Use of the Indicative, the Imperative and the Subjunctive Mood**

#### **EX. 1 COMMENT UPON THE VERB FORMS AND MODAL VERBS + INFINITIVE IN BOLD TYPE. TRANSLATE INTO UKRAINIAN.**

1. Children are unaccountable little creatures. Why should a small boy like Dicky, good as gold as a rule, sensitive, affectionate, obedient, and marvellously sensible for his age, have moods when, without the slightest warning, he suddenly went "mad dog", as sisters called it. ... "Dicky, come here! Come here, sir, at once! Do you hear your mother calling you? Dicky!" But Dicky wouldn't come. Oh, he heard right enough. A clear, ringing laugh was his reply. And away he flew...

"Very well, Dicky," she cried, "I shall have to think of some way of punishing you..."

"It's quite all right, Mr. Bendall," said Mrs. Spears... "These little things will happen from time to time." (Mansfield)

2. "What shall we do? The gentlemen and ladies at this table look as if they wondered why we came here..." — "That is very disagreeable. I wish we had a large acquaintance here." — "I wish we had any; it would be somebody to go to." — "Very true, my dear; and if we knew anybody, we should join them directly." ... "But, dear Mrs. Allen, are you sure there is nobody you knew in all this multitude of people? I think you must know somebody." ... "I wish we could have got a partner for her. I have been saying how glad I should be if the Skinners were here this winter ... or if the Parrys had come ... she might have danced with George Parry."

3. "Have you gone on with Udolpho?" — "Yes, I have been reading it ever since I woke; and I am got to the black veil." — ... "Oh! I could not tell you what is behind the black veil for the world! Are you not wild to know?" — "Oh! Yes, quite; what can it be? But do not tell me: I would not be told upon any account. I know it must be a skeleton. Oh! I am delighted with the book; ... if it had not been to meet you, I would not have come away from it for all the world." — "Dear creature, how much I am obliged to you; and when you have finished Udolpho, we will read the Italian together..." (Austen)

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES УМОВНІ РЕЧЕННЯ

Підрядні речення умови приєднуються за допомогою сполучників **if** – якщо, **unless** – якщо не, **provided** (that) – “за умовою, що” тощо.

В залежності від характеру вираженої умови умовні речення поділяються на три типи:

- 1) **Реальні речення.** У складнопідрядних реченнях з реальною умовою в підрядній частині вказується на умову, а в головній – на її наслідок.
- 2) **Нереальні (потенційні або малоімовірні речення),** що відносяться до теперішнього або майбутнього часу. У реченнях з потенціальною умовою підрядна частина вказує на умову, яка може бути здійсненою.
- 3) **Нереальні (ірреальні речення),** що відносяться до минулого часу. У складнопідрядних реченнях з ірреальною умовою в підрядній частині вказується на умову, яка не здійснюється і не може бути здійсненою, тому висловлене в головній частині лишається в сфері бажаного, ймовірного. Дієслова-присудки в складнопідрядних реченнях з підрядними, що виражають ірреальну умову, мають форму умовного способу.

| Умовне підрядне речення  | Головне речення  |
|--|--|
| <b><i>I т и п</i>      <i>Д і й с н и й с п о с і б</i></b>                    |  |
| Дієслово у формі Present Indefinite  | Future Indefinite  |
| If I have time<br>Якщо в мене буде час,<br>If it rains<br>Якщо піде дощ,       | I shall finish the experiment.<br>я завершу експеримент.<br>I shall stay at home.<br>я залишусь вдома.         |
| <b><i>II т и п</i>      <i>У м о в н и й с п о с і б</i></b>                   |  |
| Дієслово у формі Past Indefinite   | Future-in-the-Past (should, would, could, might) + Indefinite Infinitive                                       |
| If I had time<br>Якщо би в мене був час,<br>If it rained<br>Якби пішов би дощ, | I should finish the experiment.<br>я б завершив експеримент.<br>I should stay at home.<br>я б залишився вдома. |
| Дієслово <b>to be</b> вживається у формі <b>were</b> для однини та множини.    |  |
| If I were free<br>Якби я був вільний,  | I should come to you.<br>я б прийшов до тебе.  |

| Умовне підрядне речення  | Головне речення   |
|--|---|
| <i>III тип Умовний спосіб</i>  |   |
| Дієслово у формі Past Perfect  | Future-in-the-Past (should, would, could, might) + Perfect Infinitive   |
| <p>If I had had time last week,</p> <p>Якщо б у мене був час минулого тижня,</p> <p>If it had rained last week,</p> <p>Якщо б минулого тижня йшов дощ,</p> | <p>I should have finished the experiment.<br/>я б завершив експеримент.</p> <p>I should have stayed at home.<br/>я б залишився вдома.</p> |

Умовні речення II і III типу перекладаються однаково з використанням дієслова у минулому часі з часткою “б”.

### Інверсія в умовних реченнях.

В умовних реченнях II і III типів сполучники **if, unless, provided** можуть бути опущені, коли до складу присудка підрядного речення увіходять слова **should, could, were, had, might**.

В даному випадку має місце інверсія (зворотний порядок слів), на перше місце перед підметом ставиться допоміжне або модальне дієслово.

При перекладі на українську мову необхідно вживати сполучник: Had he attended all the lectures he would have passed all the exams. – Якщо би він відвідував всі лекції, він би склав усі іспити.

|                          |  |   |   |
|--------------------------|--|---|---|
| <b>First Conditional</b> | <p>The <b>if clause</b> is usually in the <i>present simple</i>. However, we can also use: <i>present continuous, present perfect simple, present perfect continuous, can, should</i>.<br/> <b>Note:</b> When we use <b>if + should</b>, the condition is less likely to be fulfilled.</p> | <p>The <b>main clause</b> usually has the verb in the future with <b>will/shall</b>. However, we can also use: 'be going to' future, <i>future continuous, future perfect, imperative, can/could, may/might, should/ought to, must</i>.</p> | <p>If he's still <b>waiting</b> for you, he'll be very angry.<br/>         If Helen <b>passes</b> all her exams, we're <b>going to buy</b> her a big present.<br/>         If Rob's <b>received</b> your letter, I'm sure he'll <b>phone</b> you today.</p> |
|--------------------------|--|---|---|

|                           |   |   |   |
|---------------------------|---|---|---|
| <b>Second Conditional</b> | The <b>if clause</b> is usually in the <i>past simple</i> . However, we can also use: <i>past continuous</i> , <b>could</b> , <b>were/was to</b> .  | The <b>main clause</b> usually has the modal <b>would</b> + <i>infinitive</i> . However, the modals <b>could</b> and <b>might</b> are also used and the infinitive can be in the continuous form. | <b>If you were coming</b> with me, I'd <b>give</b> you a lift.<br>If we <b>had</b> more money, we <b>wouldn't be living</b> here.<br>If you <b>asked</b> Tony, he <b>might do</b> it for you. |
| <b>Third Conditional</b>  | The <b>if clause</b> is usually in the <i>past perfect simple</i> . However, we can also use the <i>past perfect continuous</i> or <b>could</b> + <i>perfect infinitive</i> .             | The <b>main clause</b> usually has the modal <b>would</b> + <i>perfect infinitive</i> . However, we can also use the modals <b>could</b> and <b>might</b> before the perfect infinitive.          | If he <b>had been travelling</b> in that car, he <b>would have been killed</b> too.<br>If I <b>had known</b> there was no more work to do, I <b>could have stayed</b> in bed.                 |
| <b>Zero Conditional</b>   | To describe something that is generally true. The use of <b>if</b> here is very similar to <b>when</b> . We can also use the present simple <i>or the past simple</i> in the two clauses. | We can also use the present simple or the <i>past simple</i> in the two clauses.  | If I <b>stay</b> out late, I always <b>get</b> a taxi home. If I <b>stayed</b> out late, I always <b>got</b> a taxi home.   |

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

*Ex. 1. Form sentences using First Conditional (Real Condition):*

*IF + I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (PRESENT INDEFINITE) =  
I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (FUTURE INDEFINITE)*

*or*

*I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (FUTURE INDEFINITE) =*

*IF + I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (PRESENT INDEFINITE)*

***If it rains, I shall stay at home / I shall stay at home, if it rains.***

|    |      |                    |      |                   |                   |
|----|------|--------------------|------|-------------------|-------------------|
| If | I    | has time           | I    | will<br><br>won't | help you.         |
|    | he   | is busy            | he   |                   | go to the doctor. |
|    | she  | fall ill           | she  |                   | be very happy.    |
|    |      | come tomorrow      |      |                   | be very sorry.    |
|    |      | receive my letter  |      |                   |                   |
|    | you  | find the keys      | you  |                   | be displeased.    |
|    | we   | phones me          | we   |                   | wait.             |
|    | they | don't come in time | they |                   | play chess.       |
|    |      | stay here          |      |                   | be upset.         |
|    |      |                    |      |                   | go for a walk.    |

The Conditional sentences in the Indicative Mood (First Conditional) are used to express a real condition, i. e. a condition the realization of which is considered possible.

*Ex. 2. Form sentences using Second Conditional (Unreal Condition refers to the Present or to the Future):*

*IF + I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (PAST INDEFINITE) =*

*I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (FUTURE – IN – THE PAST + INFINITIVE)*

*or*

*I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (FUTURE – IN – THE PAST + INFINITIVE) = IF  
+ /you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (PAST INDEFINITE)*

*If I were free*  
*If I had time*  
*If I lived near*

} *I should come*

*I should come*

} *If I were free*  
*If I had time*  
*If I lived near*

|    |      |              |      |          |                          |
|----|------|--------------|------|----------|--------------------------|
| If | I    | were you     | I    |          | help you.                |
|    | he   |              | he   |          | visit the doctor.        |
|    | she  | had time     | she  |          | go to the theatre.       |
|    | you  | liked it     |      | would    | be very happy.           |
|    |      |              | you  | wouldn't | go to the restaurant.    |
|    | we   | weren't busy | we   |          | be late.                 |
|    |      | phoned       |      |          |                          |
|    | they | were free    | they |          | buy it.                  |
|    |      | came in time |      |          | write me a letter.       |
|    |      | asked me     |      |          | take a taxi.             |
|    |      | had money    |      |          | take you to the concert. |
|    |      | felt sick    |      |          |                          |

The Subjunctive Mood is used in conditional sentences to express an unreal condition (in subordinate clause) and an unreal consequence (in principal clause). In sentences of unreal condition referring to the present or future the Past Subjunctive of the verb to be (*were*) is used in the subordinate clause; with other verbs the same meaning is expressed by the Past Indefinite of Indicative Mood. In the principle clause we use auxiliary should/would and the Indefinite Infinitive. Should is used with the first person singular and plural, would is used with the second and third persons singular and plural.

*Ex. 3. Form sentences using Third Conditional (Unreal Conditional refers to the Past):*

*IF + I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (PAST PERFECT) =*  
*I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (SHOULD / WOULD + PERFECT INFINITIVE)*  
*or*  
*I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (SHOULD / WOULD + PERFECT INFINITIVE) =*  
*IF + I/you/he/she/it/we/you/they + (PAST PERFECT)*

*If I had been free*  
*If I had had time*  
*If I had lived near*

*I should have come*

*I should have come*

*If I had been free*  
*If I had had time*  
*If I had lived near*

|    |      |     |                       |      |          |                         |
|----|------|-----|-----------------------|------|----------|-------------------------|
| If | I    | had | known the truth       | I    | would    | 1. been very happy      |
|    | he   | had | phoned yesterday      | he   |          | 2. come there           |
|    | she  | had | told about it earlier | she  |          | 3. helped him           |
|    | you  | had | won the last game     | you  |          | 4. written more often   |
|    | we   | had | been invited          | we   | wouldn't | 5. been so upset        |
|    | they | had | before hand           | they |          | 6. been pleased         |
|    |      |     |                       |      |          | 7. done the work better |
|    |      |     |                       |      |          | 8. gone to the country  |
|    |      |     |                       |      |          | 9. had problems         |

In the sentences of unreal condition (Third Condition) referring to *the past* the Past Perfect is used in the subordinate clause; in the principle clause we use auxiliary *should* (with the first person) or *would* (with the second and third persons) and *the Perfect Infinitive*.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences using conditional sentences of the First Type (First Conditional):

1. Я зателефоную тобі, якщо в мене буде час. 2. Якщо цей костюм буде коштувати занадто дорого, я придбаю інший. 3. Що ти будеш робити, якщо такси не приїде? 4. Якщо він не зможе прийняти мене, я прийду іншим разом. 5. Якщо зима буде холодною, вони будуть кататися на ковзанах.

Ex. 5. Use the corresponding mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets:

1. If I (to be free) tomorrow, I shall join you with pleasure. 2. If your brother (to be) here now, he will be surprised at your behaviors and I am sure he would not approve of it. 3. If we (to be) not writing this exercise now I should give you my pen. 4. If it (to be raining) now, the children would not be running about in the garden. 5. If the students (to work) regularly they will pass their exams.

*Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences using conditional sentences of the Second Type (Second Conditional):*

1. Лікарі б допомогли тобі, якби ти слідував їхнім рекомендаціям. 2. Якби вона працювала більш наполегливо, вона би заробляла більше. 3. Якби в мене був час, я розповів тобі більше. 4. Якби вона володіла іноземною мовою, вона б змогла змінити роботу. 5. Якби діти були тут, вони б допомогли своїм батькам. 6. Якби ми побачили їх завтра, ми б віддали їм ключі.

*Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences using conditional sentences of the Third Type (Third Conditional):*

1. Якби він склав останній іспит, він вступив би до університету. 2. Ми би пішли на ту вечірку, якби знайшли няню для малюка. 3. Якби він отримав вищу освіту, він би не працював так тяжко. 4. Якби він попросив його раніше, він зміг би позичити тобі грошей. 5. Вона б не відправила сина до тієї школи, якби вона знала, що йому буде важко навчатися там.

*Ex. 8. Open the brackets forming First, Second, Third Conditional in each sentence. Translate these sentences:*

1. If she (to find out) the truth, she (to be) very happy. 2. I (to visit) him in the hospital, if I (to know) about his illness. 3. If we (not to like) his suggestion, we (to tell) him about it. 4. If John (to want) the advice, he (to ask) you. 5. If his sister (to have) better qualification, she (to be able to) apply for better job. 6. They (to find) the solution, if they (to understand) the problem. 7. If Beth (to go) to her native town, she (to be) happier. 8. If you (not to agree) with me, I (to go) to the director. 9. What you (to do), if he (to tell) you to leave?

*Ex. 9. Open the brackets using the verbs in the proper form:*

1. If I (to have) time tonight, I (to finish) this book. 2. He (can) take you to the concert tomorrow if he (to have) a spare ticket. 3. If they (to have) plenty of time yesterday, they (to miss) the train. 4. If she (to leave) at seven o'clock, we (to ask) her to give us a lift. 5. If my friend (to phone) now, I (not to feel) so lonely. 6. If someone (to give) you a million, what you (to do)? 7. If you (to be able) to finish the job tomorrow, you (to have) a holiday. 8. If she (to be) here now, she (to help) you.



*Ex. 10. Translate the following sentences and analyze the use of the Conditional Mood:*

1. I would come at once, if you were really ill. (*Essex*). 2. I should feel I was losing my one sister if you did this, and my mother would lose a daughter. (*A. Christie*). 3. When I leave town now I never tell my people where I am going. If I did I should lose all my pleasure. (*Wilde*). 4. "I know, but..." She would cry, if she said any more. (*Essex*). 5. Of course I am not like him. I know that perfectly well. Indeed, I should be sorry to look like him. (*Wilde*). 6. It would have been terrible if any cloud had come across a friendship like ours... (*Wilde*).

*Ex. 11. Complete the following sentences using the Conditional Mood and the words in brackets:*

1. She was angry with him, otherwise she ... (to say) such offending words. 2. She must have heard about this event already otherwise she ... (to look surprised) when you told her about it. 3. They must have lost their way otherwise she ... them (to return) already. 4. Probably they are out, otherwise somebody ... (to answer the phone). 5. She had a perfect command in English, otherwise she ... (to translate) the article properly.

*Ex. 12. Make up sentences:*

|               |      |        |                               |
|---------------|------|--------|-------------------------------|
| In your place | he   |        | take a tram (bus, car, ship). |
| But for him   | she  | should | travel on business.           |
| But for them  | we   | would  | go on an excursion.           |
|               | you  |        | stay at the station.          |
|               | they |        | go to Odessa.                 |
|               |      |        | travel abroad.                |

|        |                                    |               |
|--------|------------------------------------|---------------|
| I wish | I had told her about the excursion | now.          |
|        | he travelled on business           | yesterday.    |
|        | she had booked a return ticket     | today.        |
|        | she worked as a stewardess         | then.         |
|        |                                    | at present.   |
|        |                                    | at that time. |

|    |                                     |          |                                     |                 |  |
|----|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| If | I<br>he<br>she<br>we<br>you<br>they | were you | I<br>he<br>she<br>we<br>you<br>they | should<br>would | travel abroad.<br>book a return ticket.<br>go to the booking-office.<br>become a stewardess.<br>secure accomodations.<br>for a train.<br>go on a journey.<br>board a ship.<br>make a voyage. |
|----|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|

*Ex. 13. Answer the following questions according to the model:*

*Model: Suppose you want to book a ship ticket. Where would you go? – I should go to a port booking-office.*

1. Suppose you must be in Kyiv in the shortest time. Would you go there by train or by plane? 2. Yesterday I could go there by bus. What would you have done in my place? 3. I can book a ticket for a plane. What ticket would you book in my place?

*Ex. 14. Complete the following sentences:*

1. I should have missed the train if ... . 2. If I were you ... . 3. If my mother were a stewardess ... . 4. If I had money about me ... . 5. If we had spare time ... . 6. If it had been warm yesterday ... . 7. If the weather were fine today ... . 8. We should join our voyage if ... .

*Ex. 15. Put the following sentences in the Past according to the model:*

*Model: If he left at twelve, he would catch the train. – If he had left at twelve, he would have caught the train.*

1. If he were attentive, he wouldn't miss the train. 2. She would buy the ticket for a plane if she had money with her. 3. If I received any news about our voyage I should let you know. 4. If I knew the schedule of the trains, I should ring you up.

*Ex. 16. Put the following sentences in the Subjunctive Mood according to the model:*

*Model: He is not so quick; he misses the train. – If he were quick, he would not miss the train.*

1. He is busy; he does not go to reserve a ticket for the ship. 2. The girl did not know the schedule; she missed the bus. 3. He broke his bicycle; he did not go to the country. 4. I am tired; I run around too much. 5. We speak on the topic "Travelling" badly; we have no practice in English. 6. He is not attentive; he gets to the railway station in time.

*Ex. 17. Put the Infinitives in brackets in the Subjunctive Mood:*

1. I suggest that she (to join) our trip. 2. It is necessary that they (to get) plane tickets. 3. We all wish that they (to travel) by train. 4. The teacher insisted that we (to get) to the station by bus. 5. I wish you (to go) by a fast train with me yesterday. 6. Come closer so that I (to show) you a schedule. 7. If my brother (to be) here, he would help me to get train tickets. 8. They wouldn't have missed the train if they (to leave) their house earlier. 9. She wished we (to come) to the station in ten minutes. 10. He left his house early in the morning so that he (to buy) ticket for a ship quickly.

*Ex. 18. Translate into English:*

1. Ми пішли на станцію раніше, щоб швидше придбати квитки. 2. Якби вона поїхала поїздом, її брат сказав би мені про це. 3. Мені не хотілося б мати морську хворобу. 4. Вони хочуть, щоб ми з ними поїхали на екскурсію по Чорному морю. 5. Якби я був на твоєму місці, я не відмовився б полетіти літаком. 6. На Вашому місці я поїхав би туди поїздом. 7. Боюся, щоб ми не запізнилися на автобус. 8. Не може бути, щоб вони так швидко повернулися додому з подорожі. 9. Ми встали о п'ятій годині ранку, щоб не запізнитися на поїзд.

*Ex. 19. Translate paying attention to Conditional Clauses:*

1. You will get good results if you apply this method of calculation.  
2. If they find the exact meanings of these words, they will understand the text easily.  
3. If the wind were favourable, the ship would reach the port of destination early in the morning.

4. If a drop of water, so small as to be scarcely visible? were introduced into the vacuum over the mercury of the barometer at a temperature of 80° F, the water would turn into vapour and depress the mercury column about 1 inch.
5. The results of the experiment would have been much better if he had used the new equipment.
6. Had the urgent measures not been taken to prevent the overflow of the river, the embankments would have been flooded.
7. Were the vapour cooled below its dew point, some of it would become liquid.
8. Most lakes and rivers would dry up if they depended solely upon precipitation for their store water.
9. If all the atmospheric moisture were precipitated it would create a layer averaging only one inch in depth over the entire globe.
10. A great disaster might have occurred had not the vessel changed its course.

## SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD II

wish + V<sup>2</sup>

wish + had + V<sup>3</sup>

wish + would + V<sup>1</sup>

*The Subjunctive / Suppositional Mood II (sentences with the verb **TO WISH**) denotes an unreal condition referring to the present or future in adverbial clauses of condition. In other types of subordinate clauses it denotes an action simultaneous with the action expressed in the principal clause; thus it may refer to the present and to the past:*

| Без дієслова <i>wish</i>          |  | З дієсловом <i>wish</i>        |   |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|---|
| Ситуація                          | Приклад  | Ситуація                       | Приклад   |
| Теперішній<br>неозначени<br>й час | I 'm not handsome.<br>— Я не є гарним.                                 | Минулий<br>неозначени<br>й час | I wish I was handsome. —<br>Шкода, що я не привабливий.   |
|                                   | I hardly ever get<br>letters. — Я майже<br>не одержую листів.          |                                | I wish I got more letters. —<br>Добре було б одержувати<br>більше листів.   |
|                                   | You work too much.<br>— Ви занадто<br>багато працюєте.                 |                                | I wish you didn't work so much.<br>— Шкода, що ви занадто<br>багато працюєте (Я би не<br>хотіла, щоб ви так багато<br>працювали). |
| Теперішній<br>тривалий<br>час     | It's raining. — Йде<br>дощ.  | Минулий<br>тривалий<br>час     | I wish it wasn't raining. —<br>Шкода, що йде дощ.   |
|                                   | I'm going to Bristol<br>tomorrow. —<br>Завтра я їду до<br>Бристоля.    |                                | I wish I wasn't going to Bristol.<br>— Мені б не хотілося їхати до<br>Бристоля.   |
| Минулий<br>неозначени<br>й час    | She said something<br>unpleasant. — Вона<br>сказала щось<br>неприємне. | Минулий<br>доконаний<br>час    | She wishes she hadn't said it. —<br>Добре було б, коли б вона<br>цього не казала.   |
| Теперішній<br>доконаний<br>час    | I've lost my bicycle.<br>— Я загубив<br>велосипед.                     | Минулий<br>доконаний<br>час    | I wish I hadn't (lost it). —<br>Шкода, що я загубив<br>велосипед.   |

| Без дієслова <i>wish</i> |   | З дієсловом <i>wish</i> |   |
|--------------------------|---|-------------------------|---|
| Ситуація                 | Приклад   | Ситуація                | Приклад   |
| Be going to              | I'm going to do an exam tomorrow. — Завтра я збираюсь скласти іспит.      | Wish-was/were going to  | I wish I wasn't (going to do it). — Добре було б, коли б завтра мені не треба було скласти іспит.   |
| Will                     | She will keep singing in the bath. — Вона весь час співає у ванні.        | Would                   | I wish she wouldn't sing in the bath. — Мені б не хотілося, щоб вона весь час співала у ванній кімнаті (Коли ж вона припинить співати у ванній кімнаті!). |
|                          | You will talk all the time. — Ви весь час розмовляєте.                    |                         | I wish you would shut up. — Мені б хотілося, щоб ти замовкнув.  |
|                          | Will you give her a message for me? — Чи не перекажеш ти їй моє прохання? |                         | I wish you'd give her a message for me. — Чи не могли би ви переказати їй моє прохання?   |

I *wish* I *knew* where you are and what you are doing.

I *wish* I *were* only joking.

I *wish* I *had not told* you about it.

We all *wished* that we *had stopped* there.

I *wish* he *would agree* to go there.

Мені *хотілося б знати*, де ти і що ти робиш зараз.

*Добре було б, коли б* я лише жартував.

*Шкода*, що я *розповів* вам про це.

Ми всі *жалкували*, що *не зупинилися* там.

Я *би хотів*, щоб вона *погодилася* поїхати туди.

## GRAMMAR EXERCISES

Exercise 1. Make up sentences using Subjunctive II:

|      |        |  |
|------|--------|--|
| I    |        | you (to meet) us at the station.             |
| He   | Wish   | we (to take) a porter. The luggage is heavy. |
| She  | Wishes | they (to send) for a doctor at once.         |
| We   | Wished | she (to tell) her friends everything.        |
| They |        | they (to be) frank with us.                  |

Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks using the corresponding Mood form:

1. I wish you ... this film (saw, had seen). I am sure you would like it. 2. I wish you ... earlier (came, had come). You should have gone to the museum together. 3. I wish you ... time to read this article (had, had come). Now you would be able to answer all the questions. 4. I wish you ... my friend (saw, had seen).

Exercise 3. Using the corresponding Mood form instead of the infinitive in brackets:

*Model:*      1) *I wish you (to go) for a walk late in the evening.*  
                       *I wish you did not go for walk late in the evening.*  
                       2) *I wish I never (to buy) that terrible raincoat.*  
                               *I wish I had never bought that terrible raincoat.*

1. I wish I (to buy) that grey hat instead of this one. It was more expensive, but the quality was much better. 2. It looks like raining, I wish we (to take) our umbrellas. 3. The child is crying, I wish I (to know) how to calm her. 4. I wish you (to finish) your work already. We could go for a walk now. 5. I wish I (to know) it was your favourite writer. I would have bought the book for you.

Exercise 4. Complete the following sentences:

1. If I were not so busy ... 2. The weather is so fine today. I wish ... 3. Our tram is starting. Make haste lest ... 4. Had he been informed about her arrival ... 5. If it were not raining now ... 6. Should he bring you up ... 7. It is annoying that ... 8. I should have taken part in the discussion ... 9. Had he been more attentive ... 10. The teacher recommended that ... 11. Wind your watch lest ... 12. If he were not so derisive ... 13. They would have met us at the airport ... 14. It takes me much time to get to my office. I wish ... 15. She looks pale and tired as if ....

16. My friend insisted that ... 17. If you had followed your friend's advice ...  
18. Evidently the letter upset him. I wish ... 19. He dropped his eyes as though ...  
20. It is important that ... 21. If I were ...

Exercise 5. Translate the following sentences and analyze the use of Subjunctive II:

1. They walked together just as if they had done it scores of times before.  
2. Lord Henry struck a light on a dainty silver case, and began to smoke a cigarette with a self-conscious and satisfied air, as if he had summed up the world into phrase. 3. He turned away as if he had never noticed her. 4. The room looked as if it had not been lived in for years. 5. Even if she were there I would be unlikely to find her.

Exercise 6. Open the brackets using necessary Subjunctive form after "I wish" and translate:

1. I wish I (to know) French.
2. She fell and broke her leg. I wish she (to be) more careful.
3. I wish you (to read) more English books in future.
4. I feel sick. I wish I (not to eat) all the ice cream.
5. They need a singer for the choir. I wish I (can) sing.
6. My parrot has died. I wish I (to look after) it better.
7. I can't remember her telephone number. I wish I (can).
8. I wish I (not to lend) him my car: he has broken it.
9. My watch has stopped. I wish I (to have) a better watch.
10. I feel so tired. I wish I (not to stay up) so late last night.
11. My apartment is rather small. I wish I (to have) a bigger one.
12. I wish I (not to spend) all my money last night.
13. I wish I (to know) the answer to this question.
14. I wish you (to phone) me yesterday.
15. I wish I (to know) then what I know now.

Exercise 7. Paraphrase the sentences using "I wish" and translate.

1. I am not very fit. 2. We weren't together. 3. He was too upset that day.
4. They couldn't come here. 5. It's very hot today. 6. My parents are abroad.
7. It's snowing. 8. He has read my letter. 9. She doesn't know enough English.
10. My son didn't take my advice. 11. His room is untidy. 12. They wasted much time watching TV. 13. He doesn't have a lot of friends. 14. I can't swim.



## ТРЕНУВАЛЬНИ ТЕСТИ

### TESTS FOR SELF-CONTROL

#### Conditional Sentences / Subjunctive Mood II

**Test 1** Fill in the suitable words:

**A) will                      B) won't                      C) would                      D) wouldn't**

1. What \_\_\_\_\_ you do if you won lots of money?
2. If the students were studying, \_\_\_\_\_ you disturb them?
3. If you make so much noise, I \_\_\_\_\_ be able to sleep.
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ have to hurry or they \_\_\_\_\_ miss the train.
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ have missed the last bus if they had hurried.
6. If I were you, I \_\_\_\_\_ buy a new bicycle.
7. If she had locked all the doors, the burglars \_\_\_\_\_ have got in.
8. If my train is late, I \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi.
9. He must build a strong boat, otherwise he \_\_\_\_\_ be able to sail round the world.
10. If you are a good girl, I \_\_\_\_\_ buy you some chocolate.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ finish the work if you don't help me.
12. If only they \_\_\_\_\_ arrive on time.
13. You \_\_\_\_\_ understand unless you listen carefully.
14. If he hadn't cut his finger, it \_\_\_\_\_ not have hurt for weeks.
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ give you \$5 if you do me a favour.
16. If Chris didn't fall in love with Jane, he \_\_\_\_\_ give her flowers.

**Test 2** Fill in:

**A) would                      B) have                      C) had**

1. If she \_\_\_\_\_ not driven so fast, she \_\_\_\_\_ not \_\_\_\_\_ crashed her car.
2. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ washed my clothes yesterday.
3. If he \_\_\_\_\_ finished his medical studies, he \_\_\_\_\_ be a doctor now.
4. If they \_\_\_\_\_ not been late, the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ not be angry with them.
5. I only wish I \_\_\_\_\_ just a little bit more money.
6. If he \_\_\_\_\_ failed his exams, he couldn't study at the university.
7. If they \_\_\_\_\_ locked up the chickens at night, the fox \_\_\_\_\_ not \_\_\_\_\_

- eaten them and the chickens \_\_\_\_\_ be alive now.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ been here earlier if the train \_\_\_\_\_ been on time.
  9. If I saw a mouse in the kitchen, I \_\_\_\_\_ try to catch it.
  10. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a video, you could record it yourself.
  11. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ an elephant. I could travel through the jungle.
  12. I wish they \_\_\_\_\_ stop making so much noise so that I could concentrate.
  13. \_\_\_\_\_ we known your address, we \_\_\_\_\_ written a letter to you.
  14. If it \_\_\_\_\_ not been for your help, we \_\_\_\_\_ got into real trouble.

**Test 3** Match the sentences on the left with the suitable one on the right:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. If you eat more than you need,       | A) she wouldn't sing in the bath.       |
| 2. If the dog keeps barking,            | B) what would you do?                   |
| 3. If I were you,                       | C) he would never get this job.         |
| 4. If he had driven carefully,          | D) the extra calories turn into fat.    |
| 5. If you are not doing anything later, | E) we will go to the theatre.           |
| 6. Had the ice not melted               | F) he might have avoided that accident. |
| 7. Henry spoke to his dog as if         | G) the neighbours will complain.        |
| 8. I wish                               | H) we would have been here earlier.     |
| 9. If it were not for your uncle,       | I) why don't you buy a computer?        |
| 10. If I have time,                     | J) it could understand him.             |
| 11. If I met a fairy one day,           | K) I wouldn't buy these jeans.          |
| 12. If I had known you were coming,     | L) we could go skating.                 |
| 13. If you were in my shoes,            | M) come and see us.                     |
| 14. But for the traffic jam             | N) I would make a wish.                 |
| 15. If you have enough money,           | O) I could have met you at the station. |

**Test 4** Right / wrong – conditionals. Find the mistake and correct it:

**A) right**

**B) wrong**

1. What would you do if you live here all the time, as we do?
2. If we met Captain Hook in open fight, leave me to deal with him.
3. If he hadn't come by 6 o'clock, he won't come at all.
4. If you eat less than you need, the body burns fat to get energy and you loses weight.
5. If you have finished your homework, you might be able to help us.
6. I could understand your friend from Italy if he spoken more slowly.

7. If my cat were sick, I would have taken it to the vet.
8. I wish you would give me this book for a while.
9. What will the kitchen look like if we painted it green?
10. Even if he did say so, we cannot be sure that he was telling the truth.
11. If you have been walking all the night, you probably need a rest.
12. If you went to London, you might have seen the Queen.
13. If they are promising to be here, they will certainly come.
14. Even if my parents disapproved of my plans, I wouldn't have given them up.
15. I wish the weather wouldn't be so dreadful today.

## IV. МОДАЛЬНІ ДІЄСЛОВА

### MODAL VERBS

#### *Модальні дієслова та їх еквіваленти*

| Модальні дієслова та їх еквіваленти | Значення  | Present Tense   | Past Tense  | Future Tense  |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|
| <b>Can</b>                          | Фізична або розумова спроможність або можливість здійснити дію      | I, you, he, she, it, we, they<br><b>can read</b>  | I, you, he, she, it, we, they<br><b>could read</b>                                | Еквівалент<br><b>to be able to</b>  |
| <b>To be able to</b>                |   | I <b>am able to read.</b><br>You, we, they <b>are able to read.</b><br>He, she, it <b>is able to read</b> | I, he, she, it <b>was able to read.</b><br>You, we, they <b>were able to read</b> | I, we <b>shall be able to read.</b><br>You, we, they, he, she, it <b>will be able to read</b> |
| <b>Must</b>                         | Зобов'язання  | I, you, he, she, it, we, they<br><b>must read</b>   | Еквівалент<br><b>had to</b>   | Еквівалент<br><b>to have to</b>   |
| <b>To have to</b>                   | Повинність, змушеність (або необхідність за вимушеними обставинами) | I, you, we, they <b>have to read.</b><br>He, she, it <b>has to read.</b>                                  | I, you, he, she, it, we, they<br><b>had to read</b>                               | I, we <b>shall have to read.</b><br>You, we, they, he, she, it <b>will have to read.</b>      |
| <b>To be to</b>                     | Повинен (за планом, за домовленістю)                                | I <b>am to read.</b><br>You, we, they <b>are to read.</b><br>He, she, it <b>is to read</b>                | I, he, she, it <b>was to read.</b><br>You, we, they <b>were to read</b>           |   |
| <b>Should</b>                       | Моральний обов'язок,  | I, you, he, she, it, we, they   |   |   |

|                             |                         |   |   |  |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---|---|--|
|                             | порада                  | <b>should read</b>  |   |  |
| <b>May</b>                  | Дозвіл (мені дозволено) | I, you, he, she,<br>it, we, they<br><b>may read</b>   | I, you, he, she,<br>it, we, they<br><b>might read</b>   | Еквівалент<br><b>to be<br/>allowed to</b>  |
| <b>To be<br/>allowed to</b> |                         | I <b>am allowed<br/>to read.</b><br>You, we, they<br><b>are allowed<br/>to read.</b><br>He, she, it <b>is<br/>allowed to<br/>read</b> | I, he, she, it<br><b>was allowed<br/>to read.</b><br>You, we, they<br><b>were allowed<br/>to read</b> | I, we <b>allowed<br/>to read.</b><br>He, she, it<br><b>will be<br/>allowed to<br/>read</b> |

## **MODAL VERBS / GRAMMAR EXERCISES**

### **Can, could, shall (will) be able (to)**

*Ex. 1. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. She can take her examinations next June. 2. He cannot be in the street now: it's pouring! 3. What cannot be have done, I wonder! 4. I am anxious about her. She cannot be taking a walk so late. 5. You cannot have done it. I don't believe it. 6. A new-born puppy cannot see. 7. She cannot be still sleeping. 8. Could you let me know about the meeting? 9. Your friends will be able to help you tomorrow. 10. I shan't be able to come in time.

*Ex. 2. Translate into English:*

1. Я можу написати твір за дві години. 2. Мій старший брат вміє грати на гітарі. 3. Я не зміг відповісти на його запитання. 4. Не може бути, щоб вона не чекала нас. 5. Невже він не склав іспит? 6. Ти зможеш прийти на мій день народження? 7. Можу я взяти твій конспект з хімії? 8. Ми не змогли купити квитки на прем'єру у нашому театрі. 9. Невже вони виїхали в Канаду?

### **May, might, shall (will) be allowed (to)**

*Ex. 3. Translate into English:*

1. Можна сісти? 2. Можу я зачинити вікно? 3. Я можу прийти заздалегідь. 4. Ти зможеш пообідати зі мною. 5. Вона, можливо, хвора. 6. Можна цьому хлопчикові погратися твоїми іграшками? 7. Можна мені ввімкнути світло? 8. Завтра, можливо, буде злива. 9. Можливо, вона забула твою адресу. 10. Можна нам користуватися словниками?

*Ex. 4. Paraphrase the following sentences referring them to the Future and to the Past:*

Model: You *may take* my vocabulary till Friday.  
You *will be allowed to take* my vocabulary till Friday.  
You *were allowed to take* my vocabulary till Friday.

1. We may spend this week in their camp. 2. The pupils of our group may work at the laboratory twice a week. 3. You may occupy my room. 4. The students may go home. 5. She may look through these documents.

*Ex. 5. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. He may be wrong. 2. She might be working still. 3. They might have left the Institute already. 4. She might come here more often. 5. The young man might have been working all this time. 6. They may come at any moment. 7. May I read the telegram? 8. They may have lost the money, I'm afraid. 9. You may take any book you like. 10. We may not find her at home. 11. The telegram may have been sent yesterday. 12. You may think whatever you like.

## **Must**

*Ex. 6. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. One must work when one is young.
2. You must do as you are told.
3. You must not speak loud: the child is sleeping.
4. It's five o'clock. She must be at home.
5. You must come to your lessons in time.
6. She must be very tired, she looks quite worn out.
7. Where is Ann? – She must be working in the next room.
8. Haven't you finished your work yet? You must have been working for more than two hours!
9. What wretched weather! You must be wet to the skin!
10. Poor animal! How it must be suffering!
11. She must be away from home now.

## **To have**

*Ex. 7. Make the sentences interrogative and negative:*

Model:        She *has to take* a taxi.  
                  Does she *have to take* a taxi?  
                  She *doesn't have to take* a taxi.

1. My friend has to come home in time. 2. The young woman has to leave for Moldova. 3. The boy had to sleep in the children's room. 4. I have to wear spectacles. 5. We had to write the test for the second time.

*Ex. 8. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. Something has to be done about this affair!
2. He'll have to do what he's told.
3. You will have to come again.
4. Father has fallen ill, so I have to change our plans.
5. I have to stay here for some days.
6. Did you have to get up early yesterday?
7. Shall I have to clean the flat tomorrow?

## **To be**

*Ex. 9. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. I am to leave for Odesa in two days. 2. She is to return tomorrow. 3. We are to finish the experiment just now. 4. He was to be at the meeting at five, so he had to put off his visit to the doctor. 5. What am I to do? 6. She is not to come before six. 7. Hurry up! We are to be at their house at 5 o'clock. 8. My friends were to meet me at the bus-stop. 9. He is to come back in a minute.

*Ex. 10. Comment on the use of the modal verb TO BE.*

1. "Am I to stop if we meet him?" (*Galsworthy*)
2. He said wearily, "There was to have been a parade..." (*Greene*)
3. "... You are to be better informed." (*Greene*)
4. What was to become of her if she did not marry Mr. Binks? (*S. K. Hocking*)
5. What was to be done? (*A. Christie*)
6. It was the eve of the trial when Mr. Mayherne received the letter which was to lead his thoughts in an entirely new direction. (*A. Christie*)
7. From that time forward, Mr. Utterson began to haunt the door in the bystreet of shops. ... by all lights and at all hours of solitude or concourse, the lawyer was to be found on his chosen post. (*Stevenson*)
8. "... What am I to do, my lord? Am I to have any protection?" (*Dickens*)
9. "... Am I to have the benefit of the laws? Am I to have any return for the King's taxes?" (*Dickens*)



10. "You are to go now, Blick!" said Hunter, getting up. (*Murdoch*)
11. You are not to be trusted. (*Fisher*)
12. It was after breakfast, and we had been summoned in from the playground, when Mr. Sharp entered and said: "David Copperfield is to go into the parlour". (*Dickens*)
13. Your mother arranged that she was to come down from London and that I was to come over from Dover to be introduced to you. (*Shaw*)
14. Eliza, you are to live here for the next six months, learning how to speak beautifully, like a lady in a florist's shop. (*Shaw*)
15. By that time of evening only a few persons were to be seen on the wet streets and most of the shops and stores were dark and closed for the night. (*Caldwell*)

### **Shall**

*Ex. 11. Translate into Ukrainian. Comment on the meaning of the verb SHALL*

1. You shall do as you are told to.
2. I advise you to keep your word. If you don't, you shall repent.
3. We shall get a new flat in a month.
4. Shall I help you?
5. Shall he come to your place to help you with your luggage?
6. If I have enough money, you shall have the book you asked me for.
7. She shall come back, believe me.

### **Will, would.**

*Ex. 12. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. Though the work is difficult, I will do it, and it will be done well!
2. Will you kindly pass me the salt?
3. I will do it whether you like it or not!
4. Would you be so kind as to shut the window?
5. She pushed the door, but it would not open.
6. I asked him not to switch on the radio early in the morning but he would do it.

*Ex. 13. Comment on the use of the modal verbs SHALL, WILL, WOULD.*

1. "Would you go along? Would you?" Samson said to him. "I might," Roy said with obvious trickery. "If I go." (*Aldridge*)
2. "Go now to the bridge. I will look after the equipment... It shall be covered and no one shall touch it," the woman of Pablo said. (*Hemingway*)

3. "I can't stand it any more, Emmy," Jos said, "I won't stand it; and you must come with me." (*Thackeray*)
4. "But I shall not let you," he said angrily. "You cannot prevent me," she retorted. "But I will prevent you." (*S. K. Hocking*)
5. "Mrs. 6ounderby," he returned, laughing, "upon my honor, no. I will make no such pretence to you." (*Dickens*)
6. "I don't know what she saw in me to marry me, but she saw something in me, I suppose, or she wouldn't have married me." (*Dickens*)
7. "That Politt creature wouldn't have had the least idea what to do." (*A. Christie*)
8. "Do come and see Miss Emily, Miss Marple. I'm sure it would do her good." (*A. Christie*)
9. "Will you please tell me about it?" she said. (*A. Christie*)
10. "Will my saying acquit him? Will they believe me?" (*A. Christie*)
11. She shook her head, smiling a little. "Yes, you would like to know. But I shall not tell you. I will keep my secret." (*A. Christie*)
12. "Wondering why I hide my beauty, dear? He, he, he. Afraid it may tempt you, eh? But you shall see – you shall see." (*A. Christie*)
13. "... All is over. Shake hands, old man, for the last time" "Yes," replied he, "I will shake hands; for, as sure as I am here, I bear no malice." (*Stevenson*)
14. "... will you do me a favour?" "With pleasure," replied the other. "What shall it be?" (*Stevenson*)
15. "Hugh!" said Sim. "You have done well today. You shall be rewarded." (*Dickens*)

### **Need (modal and notional)**

*Ex. 14. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. You needn't come tomorrow.
2. Need I tell you what has happened?
3. You needn't come so early. The lecture begins only at 5.
4. He always needs money.
5. Does he need this dictionary?
6. I don't need any interpreter.
7. He needs your help.

*Ex. 15. Translate into English:*

1. Їй не треба було приходити сюди.
2. Він постійно потребує моїх порад.
3. Тут світло, нам не потрібна лампа.
4. Тобі треба ще грошей?
5. Мені не потрібно таксі.
6. Я встигну на поїзд.
7. Тобі потрібен мій конспект з історії?

7. Нам потрібні два квитки на цей концерт. 8. Мені потрібна твоя підтримка на зборах. 9. Все, що йому потрібно – це наша увага і розуміння.

*Ex. 16. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. You needn't be in such a fright. Take my arm. (*Shaw*)
2. One need to be careful. (*Zandvoort*)
3. Why need he bother us? (*Kruisinga*)
4. He did not need to be told twice. (*Zandvoort*)
5. You need not make a secret of it. (*Bronte*)
6. I need hardly say I would do anything in the world to ensure Gwendolen's happiness. (*Wilde*)
7. I suppose I needn't have made that observation. (*Pinero*)
8. "I needn't say," observed the locksmith, ... "that, except among ourselves, I didn't want to make a triumph of it." (*Dickens*)

### **Should, ought (to)**

*Ex. 17. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. You should work systematically. 2. She ought to be more careful. 3. Your work should be done in time. 4. He shouldn't go there. 5. My work oughtn't to have been stopped at the very beginning. 6. You should be working now and not talking with your friend. 7. The children should be more attentive at the lessons.

*Ex. 18. Translate into English:*

1. Тобі слід прочитати цю статтю. 2. Вам не треба було розказувати їй всю правду. 3. Нам треба було зробити все заздалегідь. 4. Ти б провідав свого хворого товариша. 5. Тобі не треба було йти туди без батьків. 6. Твоїй подрузі слід бути уважнішою на уроках. 7. Тобі слід було не брати kota додому. 8. Вам треба було підготуватись до екзамену краще.

## **GRAMMAR REVISION**

### **I. Modal Verbs**

*Ex. 1. Translate and comment on the meaning of modal verbs. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. I should be grateful if you would keep your hands off my business in future. (*Murdoch*)
2. Mitch Poker shouldn't be played in a house with women. (*Williams*)
3. They didn't have to worry about money. (*Mansfield*)
4. You need not meet him unless you like. (*Shaw*)
5. Mischa followed her, and they were to be seen a moment later in conversation. (*Murdoch*)
6. Anyhow, Callendar won't hear of you seeing her. (*Forster*)
7. And here now was this young and promising doctor, who could, if he would, keep her supplied with work, and might even eventually marry her. (*Dreiser*)
8. What is to be her future? It is in my hands; what am I to do? (*Pinero*)
9. Your family may object to me; and then it will be all over between us. (*Shaw*)
10. Grandpa is not upstairs. Where can he have gone? (*Cronin*)
11. You must be dying with curiosity. Take a peep. (*Shaw*)
12. Madam, may I speak to you a moment? (*Mansfield*)
13. She gazed at me severely. "You ought to be in at your essay." (*Cronin*)
14. But you've got to finish college. We can't get married for a long time. (*Carter*)
15. "I don't have to pay to find that out... I could have asked anybody at the meeting, and found out." (*Carter*)
16. "What are we to do?" she gasped. "Can't we stay here? Lock the door?" (*Priestley*)
17. "Land ought to be very dear about there," he said. (*Galsworthy*)

### **II. Using of Subjunctive and Conditional Mood**

*Ex. 2. Complete the following sentences:*

1. It was cold and our mother advised that... 2. It was raining. I feared lest... 3. We did not know where to go in summer and he advised that... 4. It was getting

dark and my friend suggested that... 5. The concert was very interesting. I wish you... 6. He got wet to the bone, I fear lest... 7. The tickets were hard to get, he insisted that... 8. They were very tired after work, so I suggested that they...

*Ex. 3. Comment on the subjunctive mood and modal verbs:*

1. If I only waited there for a minute or two, the doctor would be conducted to his patient's room. (*Collins*)
2. "If only they had made me the Duke," he could not help thinking... (*Bates*)
3. It seems to me, at this distance of time, as if my unfortunate studies generally took this course. (*Dickens*)
4. So! They were talking of Wilfred. How find out why... and suddenly she thought, "Even if I could, I wouldn't." (*Galsworthy*)
5. Oh! What would not I give to see him! (*Austen*)
6. Why should Maxim dislike Rebecca's cousin? (*Du Maurier*)
7. For a while Eric said nothing. "You know, if you hadn't broken off, you might have been married to him by now." (*Wilson*)
8. "If Miss Dinny could take him off just now, on a tour of the Scotch Highlands... it would save a lot of vexation." (*Galsworthy*)

*Ex. 4. Analyze the form of the verb in the following sentences. Translate into Ukrainian:*

1. I wished I had never heard the rumour about Phat Diem, or that the rumour had dealt with any other town. (*Greene*)
2. One always spoke of her like that in the third person as though she were not there. (*Greene*)
3. It was as if a bomb had exploded into the office. Smith, the red-faced man, looked as though his veins would burst. (*Cronin*)
4. What is the matter, Uncle Jack? Do look happy! You look as if you had a toothache, and I have got such a surprise for you. (*Wilde*)
5. Even if she were there I would be unlikely to find her. (*A. Christie*)
6. I wished I had the courage to call him back and say "You are right. I did see Pyle the night he died." (*Greene*)
7. Mrs. Cheveley, I think it is right to tell you frankly that, had I know who you really were, I should not have invited you to my house last night. (*Wilde*)
8. He again began to draw and write with a sort of remoteness, as if he were a long way off. (*Galsworthy*)
9. "The roses are in bloom now. I wish I had brought you some." (*Du Maurier*)
10. I wished I had kept my candle burning; the night was drearily dark. (*Bronte*)

- ## ТРЕНУВАЛЬНІ ТЕСТИ

## 149

5. Nobody answer the phone. They ... be out.

- |           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| a) should | c) can  |
| b) would  | d) must |

6. You ... take care of your parents.

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| a) should   | c) are to |
| b) ought to | d) must   |

7. I'm sorry, I ... have phoned to tell you I was coming.

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| a) should to | c) had to |
| b) ought to  | d) could  |

8. The power of knowledge ... placed in the hands of people.

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| a) should be   | c) need to be |
| b) ought to be | d) can be     |

9. We ... commemorate great people.

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| a) must    | c) may   |
| b) need to | d) would |

10. ... you mind passing me salt.

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| a) Will  | c) Should |
| b) Could | d) Would  |

11. As you remember ... I was always interested in economics.

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| a) may     | c) must     |
| b) have to | d) ought to |

12. ... you ... get up early yesterday to meet the delegation at the airport?

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| a) Did ... have to | c) Have ... had to |
| b) Had ... to      | d) Must ... to     |

13. Little children like books with large print. They ... read more easily.

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| a) should | c) can     |
| b) must   | d) have to |

14. The leopard ... not change his spots.

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| a) need | c) ought |
| b) can  | d) may   |

15. Our plan ... be changed.

- |         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| a) must | c) ought  |
| b) may  | d) should |

16. We ... learn it by heart.

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| a) need | c) ought |
| b) can  | d) would |

17. You ... enter the club without a card.

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| a) can        | c) could not |
| b) be able to | d) could     |

18. No museum ever ... by even one painting by this artist.

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) has ... been able to | c) has ... been allowed to |
| b) might ... have       | d) can ... been able to    |

19. ... I speak to your manager, please?

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| a) Could | c) Must  |
| b) Shall | d) Ought |

20. The news ... be true! I don't believe you.

- |          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| a) must  | c) be able to |
| b) can't | d) may        |



**V. ЛЕКСИКО-ГРАМАТИЧНІ ОСОБЛИВОСТІ**  
**АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ**

**LEXICO-GRAMMATICAL DIFFICULTIES  
OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE**

**1. THE USE OF SOME NUMERALS AND NOUNS  
EXPRESSING NUMBER**

**EXAMPLES**

1. "How many of these places have you seen?" he demanded. "All of them — **a thousand times.**" (*M. Wilson*) 2. She gave me another **five hundred dollars** and the name and phone number of a woman in New York through whom I could get work. (*R. Foster*) 4. Named Angel Fish for its very wide fins, the fish lived some **50 million years** ago in the sea covering the Padana Valley. (*Herald Tribune*) 4. Jones rose from the table **two thousand dollars** the richer. Even then he was moderate in victory. He offered his opponent his revenge and lost **five hundred and a few odd dollars.** (*Gr. Greene*) 5. There are **twenty-one thousand francs** for you (*J. D. Carr*) 6. You've blamed me **a million times** because I can't give you a child. (*G. Gordon*) 7. Nora was giving her first showing of the work she had done in **the twenty-one months** since we had been at war. (*H. Robbins*) 8. When he's finished his chorus and the band's having a turn Conroy starts to prance about the stage, twisting and shaking himself as though he's got **half a dozen scorpions** up his vest. (*St. Barstow*) 9. If she wanted to marry just to be married there were **a dozen boys** who would jump at the chance. (*W. S. Maugham*) 10. She shook her head. "No, Locky. Not in **a thousand years.**" "Well, we're progressing. First you said **a million years.** Maybe I can get it down to **a hundred** before I leave." "**A million or a thousand,** both mean never." (*O'Hara*) 11. On a chicken farm where **hundreds** and even **thousands of chickens** come out of eggs surprising things sometimes happen. (*Sh. Anderson*) 12. That is **one of the most interesting parts** of the story. (*A. Christie*) 13. **A couple of constables** were examining the windows and the geranium beds. (*A. C. Doyle*) 14. The number of rooms was alarming. They both perceived instantly, though neither of them mentioned it, that Christine's few pieces would barely furnish **two of these apartments.** (*A. Cronin*)

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. Remember not to use the preposition *of* after forms like *a dozen, three hundred, four thousand, sixteen million* and others, where the words *dozen, hundred, thousand, million* are in the singular.

Remember to use the preposition *of* after the plural forms of the same words: *dozens of, hundreds of, thousands of, millions of*.

2. The word *couple* is always followed by an *of*-phrase.

3. Numerals cannot be followed directly by personal pronouns or by word-groups like *these children, those cats, my brothers*. The *of*-phrase is the only correct form here.

4. Mind the difference between the following forms:

a) one factory — одна фабрика; one of the factories — одна из фабрик;

b) two factories — две фабрики; two of the factories — две из (некоторого числа фабрик).

5. Remember that in English, unlike Russian and Ukrainian, nouns modified by the numerals *twenty-one, thirty-one*, etc. are used in the plural. Compare: *sixty-one books* — шістдесят одна книга — шістьдесят одна книга, *forty-one years* — сорок один рік — сорок один год.

## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian:

1. You know, I've danced with you at least a dozen times now and you must tell me your name. (*W. S. Maugham*) 2. Dozens of arrests were reported. (*Morning Star*) 3. Hundreds of people passed him by but no one noticed him. (*W. Sansom*) 4. Suppose it costs a hundred thousand dollars. (*Fr. Norris*) 5. Half a hundred hands stretched towards him. (*Fr. Norris*) 6. "Stay and talk to me." "I can't. I've got a million things to do." (*M. Dickens*) 7. He's seventy-one-years old and treats me like his daughter. (*H. Robbins*) 8. Many thousands of workers have already decided at factory meetings and through trade union organisations to take industrial action on September 5. (*Morning Star*) 9. A glorious May Day here brought the biggest and most colourful demonstration for many years — and 100,000 spectators to watch it. (*Morning Star*) 10. Thank you, sir, a thousand times. You will make him come, won't you? (*E. F. Benson*) 11. Dozens of factories in various industries were hit. (*Morning Star*) 12. After the meetings thousands failed to return to work for the rest of the day. (*Morning Star*) 13. "Now, there are a couple of things I want to ask you." "Of course," she

said, "anything for you." (*R. Foster*) 14. This morning, as your wife was going over the bridge — one of the rotten planks gave way. (*A. Cronin*) 15. He turned a fretful, hungry eye upon the calendar, counting the days that intervened. There were still twelve of them to run. (*A. Cronin*) 16. He was self-conscious as a schoolboy when, a fortnight later, he came down in one of his two new suits. (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 2.* Complete and expand on the following sentences:

1. I think I shall order ... 2. There were not more than ... 3. He drove away a hijacked lorry containing ... 4. I'd be glad to contribute ... 5. I've told you ... 6. There was a crowd of ... 7. Since then he had heard the story ... 8. Each year nearly ... 9. The whole amount is ... 10. In her letter she enclosed a cheque for ... 11. I had more than ... 12. She was a faded colourless woman, offering not the least characteristic that would distinguish her from ... 13. On the little table by her side were some books, ... 14. He was very young at the time, not more, than ... 15. He sat down in one of ... 16. We had ten little ones and buried ... 17. He had one of those faces ... 18. Could I have a couple ...? 19. A couple of men ... 20. He gazed at her, burning to ask a dozen ...

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English:

1. Англійський телевізійний серіал „Сага про Форсайтів” триває більше ніж двадцять одна година. 2. Сотні робітників і службовців брали участь у демонстрації протесту проти заморожування заробітної платні. 3. Ви не могли б позичити мені сто карбованців? 4. Через декілька днів моєму братові виповниться сорок один рік. 5. Я тебе тисячу разів просила цього не робити! 6. Завдання шкоди, спричинене країні в результаті повені оцінюється у декілька мільйонів карбованців. 7. Будь ласка, не забудь купити півдюжини гудзиків; вони будуть мені потрібні сьогодні ввечері. 8. Дотепер мільйони людей на земній кулі живуть у злиднях. 9. У класі був тридцять один учень. 10. На майдані зібралося більше ніж 50.000 людей. 11. Під час кризи було зачинено сотні фабрик і тисячі робітників опинились на вулиці. 12. У процесі свого розвитку англійська мова запозичила багато тисяч слів та виразів з різних мов. 13. В залі юрбилося безліч людей. 14. Дід та онук народилися в один день, з інтервалом у півсторіччя: коли онукові виповнилося рік, діду було 51 рік. 15. На цій птахофермі щорічно вирощують шістдесят – сімдесят тисяч курчат. 16. На палубі було не більше десятка пасажирів. 17. Вона купила в крамниці дюжину гарних носових хустинок. 18. Більше тисячі школярів відвідали

під час канікул ці історичні місця. 19. У новому селищі нараховується 130 мешканців – чоловіків, жінок та дітей. 20. А. Кронін – один з кращих письменників нашого часу. 21. Йому довелося пропустити два-три заняття у зв'язку з відрядженням. 22. Спочатку дівчина поступила працювати на одну з фабрик нашого міста, а через два роки стала студенткою. 23. Обидва її сини працюють інженерами. 24. Четверо моїх учнів прекрасно склали іспити і стали студентами.

## 2. SOME PRONOUNS FOLLOWED BY AN OF-PHRASE (*SOME, ANY, ANYONE, NONE, EITHER, NEITHER, EACH*)

### EXAMPLES

1. **Some of the gifts** were not wrapped up at all. (*A. Cronin*) 2. "Yes, it was a waste of money, James. You shouldn't have bought a second-hand automobile. "It's one of the best makes! Everyone says it's better than **any of the new ones**." (*E. O'Neil*) 3. But he did not want **any of them**. (*Ch. Dickens*) 4. **None of the old friends** came, none were left on Tenth Avenue. (*M. Puzo*) 5. Conscious of their inexperience in the face of this great city which **neither of them** had seen before, Andrew and Christine descended to the platform. (*A. Cronin*) 6. It was a showier establishment than **either of them** had expected, and there was a good deal of plateglass and shiny brass about the frontage. (*A. Cronin*) 7. "This is matter either for the Board of Trade or the Mines Department." "We are at the disposal of **each of these bodies**," squeaked Billy. (*A. Cronin*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. The pronouns under discussion are never followed directly by word-groups like *these people, those books, my friends* or by personal pronouns. The of-phrase is the only correct form here.
2. The pronouns *somebody, anybody, nobody* cannot be followed by an of-phrase. Instead, *some, any, anyone, none* are used.
3. Sometimes the pronouns *some, any, none* are applied to uncountable nouns. It stands to reason that then both the noun and its modifying pronoun are used in the singular, e.g. Now, now, Mary. None of that foolishness. (*E. O'Neill*)

## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian:

1. None of his colleagues, who were already seated, took any notice of him. (A. Cronin) 2. Some of the people turned and looked across the Avenue. (M. Puzo) 3. He had never spoken to any of the guests — yet. (K. Mansfield) 4. Everyone is spying on me, and none of you believe in me, or trust me. (E. O'Neill) 5. Some of the poems and parodies he's written are good. (E. O'Neill) 6. Before any of them could say another word he swung round and left the house. (A. Cronin) 7. How can anyone of us forget? That's what makes it so hard. (E. O'Neill) 8. None of the children were hurt. (A. Cronin) 9. As the candidates went past he handed an envelope to each of them. (A. Cronin) 10. There was nobody inside except a waitress doing her hair and the cashier unlocking the cash-boxes. She stood in the middle of the floor but neither of them saw her. (K. Mansfield)

*Exercise 2.* Complete and expand on the following sentences:

1. None of us came . . . 2. Do you know any of . . . ? 3. Before anyone of us could . . . 4. There were two girls in the room, and neither . . . 5. None of her friends . . . 6. Each of the students of this group . . . 7. I liked the play I saw yesterday better than any . . . 8. Some of these children . . . 9. If you manage to read any of . . . 10. The other day my friend and I went to the theatre. The play was better than either of . . .

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English:

1. Ніхто із запрошених не запізнився, всі прийшли вчасно. 2. Ми з сестрою полюбляємо збирати гриби, але жодній з нас не подобається їх чистити. 3. Тільки деякі з моїх друзів знають про це. 4. Жінка заходила у декілька квартир, але не застала нікого з хозяїв: всі були на роботі. 5. У кожній з цих книг можна знайти багато цікавого. 6. Деякі з цих учениць збираються вступити до інституту, інші хочуть спочатку попрацювати. 7. Міг би хтось з нас це зробити? Боюся, що ні. Ніхто з нас, на жаль, не підготовлений достатньо для цієї роботи. 8. Жоден з цих віршів мені насправді не подобається. 9. Вона мовчки оглянула присутніх, але не намагалася заговорити з жодним з них.

### 3. (*THE*) *OTHER(S)*, *ANOTHER*

#### EXAMPLES

1. "Hello!" Andrew said. A moment's pause, then **the other** answered uninterestedly. (*A. Cronin*)
2. All **the other** candidates looked far more likely to be successful than himself. (*A. Cronin*)
3. But this'll show what **other people** think of it, people who are qualified to judge. (*A. Cronin*)
4. You were telling me all about it **the other night**. (*A. Cronin*)
5. You'll marry again. You'll have **other children**, too. You've had one success with Pip. You'll have **others**. (*Ch. Dickens*)
6. Life itself had come to have **no other meaning**. (*K. Mansfield*)
7. **The others** had been talking a few moments when he raised his head. (*A. Cronin*)
8. On **the other side** of her knelt **another** woman. (*A. Cronin*)
9. Rain, rain, go away, come again **another day**. (*A nursery rhyme*)
10. **Another minute** there'll be a snow-storm. (*A. Cronin*)
11. Andrew could not utter **another word**. (*A. Cronin*)
12. We sat there in silence for maybe **another five minutes** and then a cab stopped up on Alton Road. (*R. Foster*)

#### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. Remember that *another* generally modifies nouns in the singular (with the exception of *another four days*, and the like).  
*The other* (*some other, any other, no other*) may apply to nouns both in the singular and in the plural while *other* is used only with nouns in the plural.
2. The forms *other* and *others* are often confused under the influence of Russian and Ukrainian. Compare: інші студенти — другие студенты (other students); Мери, Пітер та багато інших — Мэри, Питер и многие другие (Mary, Peter, and many others).
3. Special attention should be paid to the translation of (*the*) *other(s)* and *another* into Russian or Ukrainian.

## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian:

1. Oh, dear, how hard it was to be indifferent like the others! (*K. Mansfield*)
2. Another minute and they were there. (*A. Cronin*)
3. There is another and more pressing matter which I feel he ought to take up. (*A. Cronin*)
4. Oh, don't mind me. I've got other plans for Sunday. (*M. Dickens*)
5. If he could not find another job, how was he to live? (*A. Cronin*)
6. His first impulse was to cross to the other side to avoid the oncoming figure. (*A. Cronin*)
7. There isn't any other way. (*A. Cronin*)
9. Perhaps I'll be able to show my gratitude some other way? (*A. Cronin*)
9. Another three minutes and the healthy snoring was restored. (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 2.* Fill in the blanks using (*the*) *other*, (*the* *others*) or *another*.

1. Now at last . . . forgot to be shy, forgot everything except that they were both women. (*K. Mansfield*)
2. Physical combat was offered by . . . as loyal as Mary. (*A. Cronin*)
3. . . on the Committee were regarding him more favourably, at least without hostility. (*A. Cronin*)
4. He kept one hand on the door ready to whisk back again, and help up . . . . (*K. Mansfield*)
5. "That's . . . point," reflected Freedman. (*A. Cronin*)
6. A sob broke in Andrew's throat, . . . then . . . . (*A. Cronin*)
7. People dropped in occasionally, some because they liked Daniel, . . . because they knew he had some gin. (*Ch. Dickens*)
8. And presently . . . arrived — Boland first, Urquhart next, Oxborrow and Medley together. (*A. Cronin*)
9. She felt . . . women staring at her. (*A. Cronin*)
10. Come in, old man. I'm glad to see you. I expected you . . . night. (*Gr. Greene*)
11. I reached and got . . . ten dollars. (*R. Foster*)
12. Mr Sheridan took a bite and the sandwich was gone. He took . . . . (*K. Mansfield*)
13. When he had dressed he went downstairs, wrote a long letter to Denny and . . . to Hope. (*A. Cronin*)
14. A few minutes later Andrew went downstairs with . . . candidates. (*A. Cronin*)
15. Hi, Betty! Any chance of . . . cup? (*M. Dickens*)
16. He caught the infection from . . . two. (*Cronin*)
17. I know you don't care about him much, but there'll be . . . people there, . . . doctors probably. (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 3. Complete and expand on the following sentences:*

1. I'm awfully busy now, could you come . . . 2. She has no other . . . 3. In another five years . . . 4. Her husband died several years ago, and now . . . 5. He is so good at playing the violin, he may become another . . . 6. At the Zoo we saw lions, tigers . . . 7. The other day . . . 8. He comes to see me every other . . . 9. I must consult . . . 10. Every other week we . . . 11. Mary, Peter, Johny and . . . 12. I'd like you to give me some . . . 13. One sailor survived, but . . . 14. The twins are so much alike that it is difficult to tell . . . 15. The shop is on the other . . . 16. That's quite another matter . . . 17. On the one hand I think . . .

*Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences into English:*

1. Ви чините нечесно по відношенню до інших. 2. Якщо він пробуде на Кубі ще рік, то, напевно, досконало оволодіє іспанською мовою. 3. Чи не хочете ще чашку кави? 4. Деякі студенти захоплюються фігурним катанням, інші – художньою гімнастикою. 5. Я, як і багато інших, дуже люблю природу. 6. Йому було поставлено ще багато запитань. 7. Приходьте, будь ласка, іншим разом. 8. Одна з студенток групи склала всі іспити на відмінно, інші отримали добрі оцінки. 9. На днях я зустріла знайому, яку не бачила вже багато років. 10. Ви тут, а де ж інші? 11. Мері не була готова до уроку, і вчитель викликав іншу ученицю. 12. В мене дві сестри. Одна мешкає у Санкт-Петербурзі, а інша – у Ніжньому Новгороді. 13. Вона знову кинула погляд на годинник. 14. Кілька студентів моєї групи додатково вивчають іспанську мову. Одна дівчина вже читає книги в оригіналі, інша – адаптовані книжки для молодших класів. 15. Вчора ти забув вдома один зошит, сьогодні інший! Не можна бути таким забутливим. 16. Я дуже люблю Голсуорсі, Моема та інших англійських письменників. 17. Хлопчик зробив одну спробу, потім ще одну і перестрибнув через бар'єр. 18. Ще дві хвилини, і я б спізнився на поїзд. 19. Мені не подобається ця сукня, дайте, будь ласка, іншу. 20. Деякі туристи залишились у таборі, інші пішли у похід. 21. Спочатку він позичив у приятеля три карбованці, потім ще три.



#### 4. (A) *FEW*, (A) *LITTLE*

##### EXAMPLES

1. **Few** among the eighty thousand or so air travellers who thronged the terminal daily ever glanced up at the executive mezzanine, and **fewer** still were aware of Mel tonight, high above them, looking down. (A. *Haitey*) 2. "Taxine ? I never heard oi it." "Very **few people** have, I should imagine. It is a poison that takes effect very suddenly and drastically." (A. *Christie*) 3. They inspected **a few more pieces**. (A. *Cronin*) 4. In **a few moments** he had reached the line fence. (Fr. *Norris*) 5. I was talking to your mother **a few days** ago at Pinewood Sanatorium. (A. *Christie*) 6. Her sister didn't want to talk about hospital all the time, and she could talk of **very little else**. (M. *Dickens*) 7. There seemed little he could add. (A. *Cronin*) 8. I looked at her hands. They were trembling **a little**. (W. S. *Maugham*) 9. They knew **a little** French and every day she picked up **a few words** of Chinese, so it was not difficult for her to manage. (W. S. *Maugham*)

##### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. Remember that *few* (*fewer*) and *a few* may be used only with countable nouns in the plural, while *little* (*less*) and *a little* are used only with uncountable nouns in the singular.

2. Remember that the use of the indefinite article before *few* or *little* makes their meanings different, e.g. *Do you know many people who speak Spanish? Yes, I know a few. No, I know few.*

*Few* and *little* are used in the negative sense: *few* means "not many, a small number"; *little* means "not much, a small quantity, in a small degree".

*A few* and *a little* are used in the positive sense: *a few* means "several", *a little* means "some, but not much".

3. *Few* and *a few* are never followed directly by word-groups like *these children*, *those tables*, *her friends* or by personal pronouns. The *of*-phrase is the only correct form here.

*Little* and *a little* are never followed directly by word-groups like *this conversation*, *my knowledge*, etc. The *of*-phrase is the only correct form here, as well as in the examples above.

4. To see *little of somebody* means "not to see somebody often or for long", e.g. *They had seen little of each other, but their relationship was banteringly warm and affectionately easy.* (J. *O'Hara*)

5. *Quite a few* means "a good many", "a considerable number", e.g. "How was your ride down? You've probably taken it many times." "Quite a few times. I know every foot of the way." (*J. O'Hara*)

## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian:

1. The politeness with which she treated you was exasperating because you could not but feel how little interest she took in you. (*W. S. Maugham*) 2. Yes, he was here. He left a few minutes ago. (*I. Murdoch*) 3. His dreams were so simple, his wants so few. (*Th. Dreiser*) 4. In July there were fewer and fewer lectures, because everyone had to help with the haymaking. (*Ch. Dickens*) 5. His hair was not grey at all, oh, there were a few white hairs on the temple, but they were becoming. (*W. S. Maugham*) 6. I could catch only a few of the melancholy words. (*Gr. Greene*) 7. She knew him very little then. (*W. S. Maugham*) 8. Few people were about. (*A. Cronin*) 9. There are few things better to eat than a potato baked in its skin, with plenty of butter, pepper and salt. (*W. S. Maugham*) 10. He frowned a little. (*W. S. Maugham*) 11. Little of the conversation had much meaning for George. (*J. O'Hara*).

*Exercise 2.* Fill in the blanks using (a) *few* or (a) *little*.

1. He was pretty low himself and was going to canvass the town for . . . dollars. (*O. Henry*) 2. I talked with Rosine . . . minutes this evening up at Goodwin's. (*O. Henry*) 3. He delayed . . . moments longer. (*Fr. Norris*) 4. With the springing roan under him he felt . . . care or uneasiness. (*O. Henry*) 5. The policeman on the beat moved up the avenue impressively. The impressiveness was habitual and not for show, for spectators were . . . (*O. Henry*) 6. "Richard," said Anthony Rockwall, "what do you pay for the soap that you use?" Richard, only six months home from college, was startled . . . (*O. Henry*) 7. "I hope you aren't going to shatter my illusions," he said. "Illusions?" said the matron. "We have . . . illusions here." (*D. du Maurier*) 8. He knew . . . people, for it was his business to keep in the background, but he had picked up a chatting acquaintance with several persons living in his hotel and he was not lonely. (*W. S. Maugham*) 9. Shut up, both of you! There's . . . choice between the philosophy you learned from Broadway loafers, and the one Edmund got from his books. (*E. O'Neill*) 10. The child, thought Morgan, the child might have

existed. It would have been . . . months old. (. *Murdoch*) 11. Speaking slowly and giving as . . . as possible of the lurid details, he pointed out each fact in favour of innocence. (*J. D. Carr*) 12. There were a number of young women of her own age, married and unmarried, who were very friendly to her, but there were . . . with whom she was really intimate. (*Th. Dreiser*) 13. He stopped scolding Christine and, for . . . days, was fit to live with. (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 3.* Complete and expand on the following sentences.

1. Only a few families who . . . 2. Few people know how . . . 3. I told her in as few words as possible what we . . . 4. Surely even a few days ago she would not . . . 5. She had a few intimate friends . . . 6. He seemed to know few . . . 7. He had made few changes except for . . . 8. She had too little . . . 9. Her voice was trembling a little when . . . 10. I can say very little on the subject . . . 11. After a few further remarks . . . 12. He had gone away upon a few days leave . . . 13. He crossed to the window where he remained . . . 14. There was a pause for . . . 15. She'll be all right in . . . 16. For a few moments . . .

*Exercise 4.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я можу сказати дуже небагато про цю книгу. 2. Він обіцяв повернутися за декілька хвилин. 3. В мене тут дуже мало знайомих. 4. Декілька студентів висловили бажання поїхати у піонерський табір у якості вожатих. 5. Я впевнений, що тільки деякі зможуть правильно відповісти на всі запитання. 6. Їм прийшлося пройти ще декілька миль до найближчого села. 7. Вона дещо злякалася, побачивши поряд із собою велику собаку. 8. Поступово вона стала витрачати все менше й менше часу на уроки й на іспиті отримала незадовільну оцінку. 9. Ви добре знайомі з Н.? – Ні, я його мало знаю. 10. На цій фабриці зараз менше робітників, ніж у минулому році. 11. Моєму небожеві всього декілька місяців. 12. У цілому рецензент схвалив статтю, хоча й зробив декілька зауважень по суті. 13. Канікули починаються через декілька днів. 14. Якщо у вас мало часу, особливо важливо не втрачати ані хвилини даремно. 15. У нашому саду мало троянд – всього два кущі. 16. Була п'ята година ранку, і перехожих було мало. 17. Ви б не могли мені трохи допомогти? 18. Він один з небагатьох студентів, які отримали відмінну оцінку за цю роботу. 19. Він вчора мало співав, тому що почував себе втомленим і не в голосі.

## 5. *MANY, MUCH*

### EXAMPLES

1. How **many more men** for certificates? (*A. Cronin*) 2. **Many of his patients** were ambulant consumptives. (*A. Cronin*) 3. I had so many friends. (*E. O'Neill*) 4. "We visited there ever **so many years** ago, but we didn't meet **many Californians**." "There aren't many, are there?" (*J. O'Hara*) 5. It seemed to give him **so much trouble** that Leila was ashamed. (*K. Mansfield*) 6. You needn't expect **much food** here. Oh, no! (*A. Cronin*) 7. "Do you see **much of him**, Edward?" "Yes, quite a lot." "Do you like him?" "**Very much**." (*W. S. Maugham*) 8. So, there's really no fame in it, and no money, and not **too much happiness** in terms of what the world has to offer. (*M. Wilson*) 9. Mother had **not much appetite**, nor indeed, had I. (*A. Cronin*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. *Many* modifies only countable nouns; the sphere of application of *much* is wider; it may refer to uncountable nouns, to verbs, and to adjectives (adverbs) in the comparative degree. Russian and Ukrainian learners sometimes confuse these words because in Russian много and Ukrainian багато modifies both countable and uncountable nouns.
2. It follows from what has been said above that *much* is never applied to nouns in the plural.
3. Both *many* and *much* have several equivalents: *a tot (lots) of*, *plenty of*. *A good (great) deal of* is equivalent only to *much*.
4. *Many* can be modified by the words *good* or *great*, e.g. *a good many times*.
5. Normally, *many* is not modified by *very*, although it is perfectly correct to say *not very many*.
6. There is a tendency in colloquial English to use *much* in interrogative and negative sentences, and replace it by *plenty of*, *a good (great) deal of*, or *a lot (lots) of* in affirmative sentences.
7. *Many (most)* is never followed directly by word-groups like *these children*, *my friends*, etc. or by personal pronouns. Likewise *much (most)* cannot be followed directly by word-groups like *this work*, *my time*, etc. The *of*-phrase is the only correct form here.
8. *Not to see much of somebody* means "not to see somebody often or for long", e.g. *We don't see much of you these days*. (*J. O'Hara*)

9. Remember that the Ukrainian багато цікавого (нового, корисного і т. д.) corresponds to the English *many interesting (new, useful, etc.) things*.

## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I've been to a great many doctors here. (*A. Cronin*) 2. Her wire had not given him much time. (*A. Cronin*). 3. How many other people are staying here? (*K. Mansfield*). 4. Many of his cases were urgent. (*A. Cronin*) 5. Come and sit down. You mustn't stand on your feet so much. (*E. O'Neill*) 6. The campaign aims at involving thousands of women, and men too, in collecting as many contributions as possible. (*Morning Star*) 7. I was returning without much hope to a country of fear and frustration. (*Gr. Greene*) 8. He laughed with slight embarrassment. "You mustn't pay me so many compliments." (*A. Christie*) 9. Bryce Douglas stands in a much more delicate position. (*J. D. Carr*) 10. Nearly all his friends went to Harvard. My two brothers and so many of his close friends. (*J. O'Hara*)

*Exercise 2.* Fill in the blanks using *many* or *much*.

1. It doesn't make . . . difference, does it? (*Gr. Greene*) 2. They had a pleasant tea and . . . hot buttered toasts with the other members of the staff. (*A. Cronin*) 3. He had met . . . of the leading physicians, yet he knew none of the London surgeons. (*A. Cronin*) 4. There were . . . such cases. (*A. Cronin*) 5. He's lived too . . . in hotels. (*E. O'Neill*) 6. Under the microscope, the sweatpores of the hand are as distinctly visible, and set far apart, as holes made by so . . . pins. (*J. D. Carr*) 7. "How is uncle this morning?" "He seems . . . better," says the young man. (*O. Henry*) 8. I had to go to Pitt's before I went to the china shop, and there wasn't . . . time. (*R. Ferguson*) 9. I did not see . . . of Maggie that winter. (*A. Cronin*) 10. You don't like me very ..., do you, Pat? (*/ Murdoch*) 11. He took the trouble to tell me . . . interesting things about his work. (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 3. Complete and expand on the following sentences.*

1. I'm ever so much obliged to you . . . 2. I haven't seen much of Mary . . . 3. There are many . . . 4. In Leningrad I saw a great many . . . 5. There isn't much time left . . . 6 How many inhabitants . . . 7. Many of my friends . . . 8. They didn't speak much . . . 9. There are not very many places of interest ... 10. How much is ... 11. What I think is that roses are much more beautiful . . .

*Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences into English.*

1. У цьому місті в мене багато друзів. 2. Сьогодні ви виглядаєте набагато краще, ніж вчора. 3. Велике вам спасибі! 4. Дівчинка дуже лякається грози. 5. Мені дуже сподобався вчорашній концерт. 6. Чи багато ви прочитали англійських книг у оригіналі? 7. Вона знала, що на неї чекає дуже багато роботи. 8. Викладачеві завжди дуже приємно, коли студенти задають йому багато запитань. 9. Ви впевнені, що цей метод насправді дозволить зекономити багато часу та енергії? 10. Було ясно, що мати дуже скучила за сином, якій надовго поїхав з дому. 11. Я дуже здивувалась, що у Ганни робота виявилась значно гіршою, ніж у всіх інших студенток групи. 12. Мій брат знає багато англійських загадок і скоромовок. 13. Вам слід було братися за цю роботу набагато раніше. 14. Багато студентів нашого інституту вивчають англійську та німецьку мови, деякі – англійську та іспанську. 15. Скільки в нас завтра лекцій? 16. Вона розповіла мені багато цікавого про Лондон.

## 6. THE PLACE OF *ENOUGH*

### EXAMPLES

1. I suddenly thought for once in my life I shall have **enough canna lilies**. (*K. Mansfield*) 2. There was just **enough water** to soak the sponge. (*K. Mansfield*) 3. Isn't my work **good enough** for you, Doctor Manson? (*A. Cronin*) 4. "I don't fancy it," he said. "**Not conspicuous enough**." (*K. Mansfield*) 5. "Yes," she said, **not quickly enough** to please him. (*A. Cronin*) 6. You could see your way **well enough** if you were sober. (*E. O'Neill*)

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

Normally, the word *enough* precedes nouns and follows adjectives and adverbs.

### EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. As if we hadn't enough worries of our own. (*A. Cronin*) 2. That's easy enough, in theory. (*D. Carr*) 3. Maybe you'll be kind enough to explain this. (*A. Cronin*) 4. He was not well enough for visitors. (*Ch. Dickens*) 5. He isn't strong enough. (*E. O'Neill*) 6. The Penelly Valley train into which he changed at Cardiff would not, simply would not go fast enough. (*A. Cronin*) 7. Will you take the advice of a woman old enough to be your mother? (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 2.* Complete and expand on the following sentences.

1. He was not well enough . . . 2. The weather was not wet enough . . . 3. Isn't his work good enough . . . ? 4. The man had barely enough money . . . 5. I couldn't reach home fast enough . . . 6. I thought I'd given you enough . . . 7. Are you sure you've got enough . . . ? 8. If they try hard enough . . .

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Ви відмінно знаєте, хто ця людина. 2. У безробітного не вистачало грошей, щоб зводити кінці з кінцями. 3. Він вже достатньо дорослий, щоб відповідати за свої вчинки. 4. Цього шматка тканини недостатньо, щоб зшити таку сукню. 5. Вона досить добре танцює, чи не правда? 6. Я чудово себе почуваю і можу приймати гостей. 7. На жаль, ваша відповідь недостатньо вичерпна. 8. В нас не вистачить на вечір хліба; збігай, будь ласка, у крамницю. 9. Він ще недостатньо зміцнів після хвороби, щоб виконувати таку важку працю. 10. У вас достатньо часу?

## 7. *THERE IS (THERE ARE)* IN NEGATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

### EXAMPLES

1. We can't keep people from talking. **There's no way** in the world to put an end to such talk. (*E. Caldwell*) 2. I went into the office and called my answering service. **There were no messages.** (*R. Foster*) 3. **There isn't much** I want to see. (*J. O'Hara*) 4. "I'll come a little way with you." The Superior felt in the pocket of his soutane for a cheroot, but **there wasn't one** there. (*Gr. Greene*) 5. She was always the wife of George Lockwood, so much so that in the two towns **there were not a dozen women and not a man** who called her by her first name. (*J. O'Hara*) 6. He was asking if **there was any bacon**, and **there wasn't any.** (*P. Marquand*) 7. I obeyed, **there wasn't anything else** to do under the circumstances. (*R. Foster*) 8. Pausing in admiration before the sink he observed that **there was not a scratch** on the spotless enamel, not a stain on the bright metal. **No leaking taps, no rust anywhere, no smoke smudges, no sagging shelves, no worn oilcloth, no trash piles** in corners, **no unsightly garbage cans**, and (Heaven be praised!) **no black beetles.** There was, indeed, not one of the homely discomforts among which he had grown up and without which he was lonely. (*E. Glasgow*) 9. **There's nothing to be done** about what has already happened. (*E. Caldwell*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. The negation *no* is never followed by a noun with an article; nor is it followed by the pronouns *any* (*anyone, anything, anybody*), *some* (*something, somebody*), *none* (*nothing, nobody*), *another*; by the adjectives *many, much, few, little, enough, single*.

Normally, it is followed by a noun without any article. The noun may be modified by an adjective or the pronoun *other*.

2. Normally, the negation *not* is not followed by the pronouns *other, some, something, somebody*.

The negation *not* may be followed by the pronouns *any, any other, another, anything, anyone, anybody*; the adjectives *many, much, few, little, enough, (a) single*; the numerals *one, two, three*, etc. *Many, much, few, little* can be modified by *so* or *very*.

3. If the negation *not* is followed by a noun with the indefinite article, it generally means "not a single." Compare: *There are no clouds in the sky* (На небе нет облаков). *There is not a cloud in the sky* (На небе ни облака).



## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. There wasn't too much time, but this time I didn't hurry. (*R. Foster*) 2. There are not many people who've had the experiences I've had in one way and another. (*W. S. Maugham*) 3. I felt that there was not a moment to waste. (*W. S. Maugham*) 4. He felt happy now. There was not anything that was irrevocable. (*E. Hemingway*) 5. There was no time to find out what was going on. (*R. Foster*) 6. Today, there is not so much to do. (*Fr. Norris*) 7. "There aren't many things you really want, are there?" "Not many," she said. (*J. O'Hara*) 8. There was no doubt that she was a very frightened woman. (*R. Foster*) 9. There was not a ripple on the surface of the water. (*W. S. Maugham*) 10. There really wasn't enough time. (*R. Foster*) 11. Dazed, she went to the door and knocked loudly. There was no answer. (*E. Caldwell*) 12. There wasn't much else to say. (*H. Robbins*)

*Exercise 2.* Complete and expand on the following sentences.

1. Don't you worry. There won't be any. . . 2. There was nothing to . . . 3. These few weeks when there was not much . . . 4. I used the house phone to call Mary, but there was no . . . 5. It was still pretty early and there were not many . . . 6. I believe that, all in all, there is not so much . . . 7. There isn't anything . . . 8. There wasn't much . . . 9. I was sure there was not . . . 10. Do you know if there are . . .? 11. There wasn't a nerve in my body . . . 12. There was not a note of welcome . . . 13. There was nothing to be . . . 14. There's no comparison at all . . . 15. There were not many other things . . .

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. В крамниці було небагато народу. 2. Я подзвонив ще раз, але відповіді не настало. 3. Праці було мало (небагато), і він встиг за тиждень добре відпочити. 4. Не хвилюйтеся. Ніяких неприємностей не буде. 5. На небі не було ані хмаринки, погода була дивна. 6. На мою думку, між ними не було ніякої різниці. 7. На підвіконні було не два і не три, а десять горщиків з квітами. 8. Часу явно недостатньо, ми не встигнемо все закінчити до вечора. 9. Навколо нікого не було, і вона злякалася. 10. Грошей було не дуже багато, і їй довелося зменшити свої витрати. 11. У цукерниці

недостатньо цукру – додайте, будь ласка, ще трохи. 12. У комісії, на жаль, немає жодного представника від нашої групи. 13. Робити нічого! 14. Без сумніву, він зробив все, що було в його силах. 15. Немає троянди без шипів. 16. Він попросив дати йому поїсти, але вдома нічого не було. 17. На новому пеналі ще не було жодної подряпини. 18. Інших пропозицій не надійшло.

## 8. THE VERB *TO HAVE* IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES

### EXAMPLES

1. We've **no money** to buy furniture with. (*A. Cronin*) 2. **I have no wish** to go behind the facts. (*A. Cronin*) 3. I **had no intention** of leaving the ship. (*Gr. Greene*) 4. Bertha couldn't help feeling, even from this distance, that it (the tree) **had not a single bud or a faded petal**. (*K. Mansfield*) 5. He assured him that he **would have not the slightest difficulty** in effecting a quick sale. (*A. Cronin*) 6. She pitied the poor young gentleman for **having no one** to look after him. (*K. Mansfield*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. The negation *no* is never followed by a noun with an article; nor is it followed by the pronouns *any* (*anyone, anything, anybody*), *some* (*someone, something, somebody*), *none* (*nothing, nobody*), *another*; by the adjectives *many, much, few, little, enough, single*.

Normally, it is followed by a noun without any article. The noun may be modified by an adjective or the pronoun *other*.

2. Normally, the negation *not* is not followed by the pronouns *other, some, something, somebody*. The negation *not* may be followed by: the pronouns *any, any other, another, anything, anybody, anyone*; the adjectives *many, much, few, little* (these, in their turn, may be modified by *so* or *very*); (*a*) *single, enough*; the numerals *one, two, three*, etc.

3. The negation *not* may be also followed directly by a noun with the definite or the indefinite article. Normally, a noun with the definite article is used if this noun is modified by an adjective in the superlative degree. If the negation *not* is followed by a noun with the indefinite article, it may mean (not necessarily!) *not a single*.

4. In British colloquial style the form *have got* is often used instead of *have*.  
*E.g.* He's got no card. (*A. Cronin*) "What napkins? I've never seen any." "They haven't got any napkins." (*Ch. Dickens*)
5. The negative meaning is often expressed in modern English by means of the negative form of the verb *to have* formed with, the help of the auxiliary verb *to do*.  
*E.g.* Ossie did not have so much time to worry about Daniel now. (*Ch. Dickens*) We didn't have much difficulty. (*A. S. Hornby*)

## **EXERCISES**

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. I have no wish to embarrass you. (*A. Cronin*) 2. She had nothing to say. (*A. Cronin*) 3. You have no idea how a child of that age can behave. (*K. Mansfield*) 4. I've no doubt you'll find other doctors. (*A. Cronin*) 5. He had not many patients at the start. (*A. Cronin*) 6. You certainly haven't any fever now. (*E. O'Neill*) 7. I have had no training as a teacher. (*E. R. Braithwaite*) 8. I hadn't enough chemistry to get to that. (*A. Cronin*) 9. Con, who had been six years in Aberlath, had not a penny to his name. (*A. Cronin*) 10. "But what's on his mind, sir? What's bothering him?" "I have not the slightest idea." (*J. D. Carr*) 11. But now! Lennie has gone — what had she? She had nothing. (*K. Mansfield*)

*Exercise 2.* Complete and expand on the following sentences.

1. He hadn't enough . . . 2. I had no reason to believe . . . 3. He had no hobbies of any kind, and . . . 4. I am sure you haven't any right . . . 5. Many young people abroad have no . . . 6. She hasn't a single . . . 7. I haven't many . . . 8. The old woman had nobody . . . 9. He hadn't the remotest notion that . . . 10. I'm afraid this measure will not have the slightest effect . . .

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. У нього не було часу прочитати цю книгу. 2. У моїє мами немає ще жодної сивої волосини. 3. В мене немає ніякого бажання подивитися цей кінофільм. 4. У нього не було ані гроша за душею. 5. Дівчинка нещодавно переїхала до нашого міста, і в неї ще тут небагато друзів. 6. У Ентоні Грехема не було жодної сестри. 7. В мене недостатньо паперу, принеси

мені, будь ласка, ще трошки. 8. Ви не уявляєте, як я рада вас бачити! 9. Їй нічого було сказати у відповідь. 10. Протягом довгого часу у Мартіна Ідена не було достатньо грошей для того щоб регулярно їсти. 11. Моя старша сестра зовсім не має веснянок, а в мене є.

## 9. THE USE OF THE VERB *TO MAKE*

### EXAMPLES

1. "You can't **make me stay**. Nobody can **make me stay**." "I'm not trying **to make you stay**. Your life is your own, and all, or most of it, is still before you." (*E. Glasgow*) 2. It **made her feel sad** somehow. It **made her feel old**. (*J. Murdoch*) 3. I was very much of the skeleton in the cupboard, and **made to feel** so too. (*G. Gordon*) 4. She did not seem able **to make Charlie** see how desperately grave the situation was. His airiness **made her impatient**. (*W. S. Maugham*) 5. For the first time he felt they were speaking freely and frankly and it **made him happier**. (*G. Gordon*) 6. It **made her angry**. (*W. S. Maugham*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. Never use the particle *to* before an infinitive preceded by the verb *to make* in the Active Voice.
2. Never omit the particle *to* before an infinitive preceded by the verb *to make* in the Passive Voice.
3. Don't use the infinitive of the verb *to be* before an adjective following the verb *to make*.

### EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. That was a thought. That made him feel better. (*E. Hemingway*) 2. It made her heart beat nineteen to the dozen. (*W. S. Maugham*) 3. I wish I could make you as happy as you make me. (*W. S. Maugham*) 4. You're making us both miserable with your crazy ideas. (*G. Gordon*) 5. But Stanley was prettier than ever, he

thought, in this primrose-coloured wisp of a frock, which made her look like a spring flower. (*E. Glasgow*) 6. I like you because you make me laugh. (*Ch. Dickens*) 7. He'll only make things worse. (*W. S. Maugham*) 8. "Then why is she marrying him? Nobody is making her do it." "That's what I've been trying to make out." (*E. Glasgow*) 9. The cold brought the blood to his cheeks and made them redder than ever. (*G. Gordon*)

*Exercise 2.* Give the corresponding active construction.

1. He could be made to send her to school. (*R. Ferguson*) 2. If Carolyn had any influence, she must be made to use it. (*D. Robins*) 3. He had been made to feel himself a pariah. (*A. Cronin*) 4. Do you think I like this? How do you think I like being made to feel as if I were out to trap you? (*M. Wilson*) 5. He did not know, he would never know how this had come about, how the writhing paralytic had been made to walk. (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 3.* Give the corresponding passive construction.

1. Asa, there is nothing to get so worked up about. I was only trying to make you see. (*E. Glasgow*) 2. I could still make him do anything I wanted. (*R. Ferguson*) 4. Then she made me walk beside her. (*R. Ferguson*) 4. They made her lie on sofas and were solicitous that she should cover her feet. (*W. S. Maugham*)

*Exercise 4.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Його впертість вивела мене з себе. 2. Це переконує мене у вашій правоті. 3. Чому ви не змусите його переробити роботу? 4. Від цієї їжи їй стало погано. 5. Влаштовуйтесь зручніше. Концерт зараз почнеться. 6. Мене змусили повторити все сказане раніше. 7. Слова лектора змусили мене замислитися над моїм особистим життям. 8. Від таємничого шарудіння в мене кров застигла в жилах. 9. Тільки ви можете зробити мене щасливим! 10. Її самолюбство було вражене; це змусило її відмовитися від поїздки. 11. Сподіваюсь, я вас не розсердила? 12. Мені набридли ваші запитання. 13. Мішки під очима робили її значно старше. 14. Від реву падаючої води у неї зопаморочилося в голові. 15. Чому ви так гадаєте? 16. Розповідь розсмішила всіх присутніх. 17. Борода та вуса робили парубка старше від

своїх років. 18. Свіжий весняний вітер підняв в мене настрій. 19. Від швидкої ходьби їй стало дуже жарко.

## 10. YES AND NO USED IN REPLIES TO NEGATIVE QUESTIONS OR STATEMENTS

### EXAMPLES

1. "It doesn't matter." "**But it does.**" (*A. Cronin*) 2. "I don't like you." "**Oh, you do!**" (*Ch. Dickens*) 3. "Oh, you don't want to go there." "**I do.** I've always wanted to since you told me about it." (*Ch. Dickens*) 4. "What's the matter?" he asked as Daniel laid down his fork. "Don't you like it?" "**Oh yes,** it's fine, fine," he said, cocking an eye at Valerie. (*Ch. Dickens*) 5. "Now, in England, in your 'boarding 'ouse', one does not find the First Class, as in Germany." "**No, indeed,**" I replied. (*K. Mansfield*) 6. "I'm a fool to argue. You can't change the leopard's spots." "**No, you can't.**" (*E. O'Neill*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTE

In English positive or negative replies to negative questions or statements are different from those in Ukrainian.

*Compare:* You won't come, will you? Вы не придете?

(Yes), I will. Нет, приду. (No), I won't. Да, не приду.

### EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. A deprecating shrug. "We don't do our business like that." "Oh, yes, you do, Mr Isaacs. At least it says so in your letter." (*A. Cronin*) 2. "It's not a bad room, is it?" "No, it's not." (*M. Wilson*) 3. "Don't nod your head like that, Moon." "I'm not nodding. It's you." "It is not. I never nod my head." "O-oh, you do. You're nodding it now." (*K. Mansfield*) 4. "Maybe George doesn't like so much sweet marjoram?" "Yes, I do. I like it." (*J. O'Hara*) 5. "You can't stop something that never began." "Yes, you can. You can stop something before it begins." (*J. O'Hara*) 6. "We don't seem able to avoid unpleasant topics, do we?" — "No." (*E. O'Neill*) 7. "But let's not talk about it. It's no use now." "No. AH we can do is

try to be resigned." (*E. O'Neill*) 8. "You never loved any of those women?" He hesitated. "Yes, I loved one." (*J. O'Hara*)

*Exercise 2.* Expand on the following sentences.

1. You haven't met my mother, have you? 2. I'm afraid you don't remember when Charles Dickens was born. 3. Let me help you. Anyway, you can't do this work alone. 4. You think the boy is very intelligent, but in my opinion he isn't. 5. Don't you like your future job? 6. It's not very cold, is it? 7. Dickie never tells lies. 8. Aren't you going to this concert? 9. I'm not angry with you.

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Ви не хочете поїхати за місто, чи не так? – Так, не хочу. 2. Він зовсім про це не подумав. – Ні, він подумав, але промовчав. 3. Чесна людина ніколи так не вчинить. – Так, звичайно. 4. Ви, напевне, ще не бачили цього листа? – Ні, бачила. 5. Я тебе ні в чому не підозрюю. – Так, звісно. 6. Я впевнена, що він дійсно не приходив вчора у бібліотеку. – Ні, приходив. Він мені сказав про це сам. 7. Я знаю, що тобі не подобається така сира і холодна погода. – Так, насправді, не подобається. 8. Хіба ми не можемо вам допомогти? — Так, можете, і я вам буду дуже вдячна. 9. Він ніколи не приходить вчасно. – Неправда. 10. Невже вона ще не закінчила свою курсову роботу? – Ні, закінчила нарешті.

## 11. *TOO AND EITHER*

### EXAMPLES

1. "Ha!" said Sir Rumbold. "So, you've been a victim **too**." (*A. Cronin*) 2. Rosa Keane was unkind enough to laugh. Frances was smiling **too**. (*A. Cronin*) 3. Yet, he's like a child, he hates to admit it. Well, I suppose I snore at times, **too**, and I don't like to admit it. (*E. O'Neill*) 4. I can't get poor Harry Vidler out of my head. And I won't, **either**, till I do something really to make up for it. (*A. Cronin*) 5. Sorry I haven't been able to come and see you. I've been ill, and I haven't been able to see Gracie **either**. (*W. S. Maugham*) 6. "I mean it complimentary," said

Cathal. "You do not." "All right, I don't. And you don't like him **either**."  
(/. *Murdoch*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTE

Both *too* and *either* correspond to the Russian тоже, также or Ukrainian теж, також. However, there is a difference in their use: *too* is used in affirmative sentences, and *either* is used in negative ones.

### EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. His wife, who stood near, closely observing Andrew, was nervous too. (*A. Cronin*) 2. "I think that's over for you." "I do too." (/. *O'Hara*) 3. It gets on my nerves. I can't imagine Reggie likes it either. (*Ch. Dickens*) 4. If you don't want the box, throw it in the waste basket. I don't want it now either. (/. *O'Hara*) 5. "Harry never mentioned Martha to me." "Too much of a gentleman. He never mentioned her to me, either." (/. *O'Hara*)

*Exercise 2.* Fill in the blanks using *too* or *either*.

1. And now she looked at the others, they were smiling . . . (*K. Mansfield*) 2. All right, all right, I'll stop. God knows, I don't like the subject . . . (*E. O'Neill*) 3. His popularity was never in doubt. He got on well, . . . , with Doctor Milligan. (*A. Cronin*) 4. He's had to fight jealousy and prejudice and misrepresentation . . . (*A. Cronin*) 5. "Nurse, you are not to call the patients' by their Christian names. Nor the nurses . . .," she said. (*Ch. Dickens*)

*Exercise 3.* Complete and expand on the following sentences.

1. Mother didn't think it funny . . . 2. Yesterday Mary came home very early . . . 3. You're a doctor, and . . . 4. If he doesn't come I shall not . . . 5. My sister is not very strong, and . . . 6. I haven't been to London yet . . . 7. Everybody knew the answer . . . 8. The first boy sounded very enthusiastic . . .



*Exercise 4. Translate the following sentences into English.*

1. Моя сестра дуже полюбляє готувати; мені теж це подобається. 2. Вчора Джон запізнився на урок; сьогодні декілька інших студентів теж запізнилися. 3. Я ще не була у Санкт-Петербурзі. Моя сестра теж. 4. Якщо вона не піде в кіно, я теж не піду. 5. Мені не сподобалась її відповідь. Інші були теж невдоволені. 6. Якщо ти будеш брати участь в концерті, тоді і я теж. 7. Сховайся скоріш за дерево! – Ти теж!

## 12. ADJECTIVES IN THE FUNCTION OF A PREDICATIVE (NOT TO BE CONFUSED WITH ADVERBS)

### EXAMPLES

1. "You **look marvellous**," said Tallis, "you look like flowers, fields, country things." (/. *Murdoch*) 2. She **felt vague and gloomy**, she did not quite know why. (/. *Murdoch*) 3. Johnny was in that phase of lotus-eating when all the world **tastes bitter** in one's mouth. (O. *Henry*) 4. This **would have sounded odd** in English some time ago. (Br. *Foster*) 5. It **was dreadful** that she could not control the trembling of her lips. (W. S. *Maugham*) 6. His dusty, shabby suit was threadbare. His dirty shirt was frayed at the cuffs. He **felt bad**. (/. H. *Chase*) 7. You mustn't mind Edmund, James. Remember **he isn't well**. (E. *O'Neill*) 8. She found the woman **looking** at her **sharply**. (A. *Cronin*) 9. Oh! forgive me, I've **said** that **badly**, but you know what I mean. (A. *Cronin*) 10. How can you **feel** so **differently** about someone who means so much to me. (K. *Mansfield*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. A frequent mistake made by Russian or Ukrainian learners consists in the use of adverbs instead of adjectives in the function of a predicative in a compound nominal predicate. Remember that normally adverbs do not enter a compound nominal predicate apart from a few exceptions, e.g. to be (feel, look, seem) well (бути, почувати себе, виглядати) здоровим (добре).

As a rule, adverbs serve to modify verbs or adjectives.

2. Confusion of adjectives and adverbs is often caused by the interfering influence of the Russian and Ukrainian language. *Compare:*

(a) Він виглядає дивовижно. Он виглядит изумительно. He looks marvellous.

(b) Він співає дивовижно. Он поет изумительно. He sings marvellously.

3. It should be borne in mind that some English verbs, e.g. *to look, to feel* can be used both as simple verbal predicates and as link-verbs. *Compare:* When she had read it she looked at him happily. (*A. Cronin*) I didn't meet a soul. Everything looked and sounded unreal. (*E. O'Neill*) 4. Mind the difference between the following: (a) *To look good* (i.e. better than the rest). He didn't look good like that, he was packing too much weight. (*H. Robbins*) (b) *To look well* (e.g. after illness or some unpleasant occurrence). "I must say, you look very well, Daniel," his aunt said uncertainly. "Me? I'm fine." (*M. Dickens*)

## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. You sound serious. (*A. Cronin*) 2. He felt strong and daring. (*W. Sansom*) 3. The farm and everything about it looked beautiful, beautiful indeed. (*A. Coppard*) 4. It seemed dreadful that a man of sixty should hesitate to smoke what he wanted in his own study. (*W. S. Maugham*) 5. His tongue felt dry and large and it tasted bitter in his mouth. (*J. London*) 6. Well, of course, it sounded too wonderful! I was green with envy! (*A. Christie*) 7. She thought he looked very romantic. (*Ch. Dickens*) 8. I wouldn't have wished my worst enemy to feel so awful. (*R. Ferguson*) 9. How simple everything would be! (*W. S. Maugham*) 10. It had always seemed perfectly natural that he (their father) should lead a dog's life in order to provide them with board and lodging, clothes, holidays and money for odds and ends. (*W. S. Maugham*) 11. It was evident at first sight that she was not well. (*A. Cronin*)

*Exercise 2.* Open the brackets using the right word.

1. Life began to look (*rosy, rosily*) again. (*O. Henry*) 2. What he said was so (*unexpected, unexpectedly*) that at the first moment she could hardly gather its sense. (*W. S. Maugham*) 3. The waiter looked at me (*suspicious, suspiciously*) as I made my way upstairs. (*W. S. Maugham*) 4. "You could knock me down with a feather," she answered so surprised that she looked at him (*blank, blankly*). (*W. S. Maugham*) 5. That would be (*dreadful, dreadfully*). (*Ch. Dickens*) 6. His pale, brows went up and his eyes looked (*blank, blankly*) when Valerie, glancing at Daniel and prepared to stop if he dared to look (*triumphant, triumphantly*), explained over-elaborately to Mr Piggott why she had to leave him alone for the

day. (*Ch. Dickens*) 7. "It will certainly look (*suspicious, suspiciously*)" he said. (*G. Gordon*) 8. "Yes," said Erik, wondering why his plan sounded so (*thin, thinly*). (*M. Wilson*) 9. The commissioner returned to his office looking (*thoughtful, thoughtfully*). (*O. Henry*) 10. Strickland looked at me (*thoughtful, thoughtfully*) for nearly a minute. (*W. S. Maugham*) 11. Things might have been (*different, differently*). At least I'd have felt (*different, differently*). (*M. Wilson*) 12. Of course it was not (*certain, certainly*) yet that Walter knew the truth. (*W. S. Maugham*) 13. How (*different, differently*) was the position now. (*A. Cronin*) 14. He answered (*angry, angrily*). (*A. Cronin*) 15. Tyrone looks after him (*angry, angrily*). (*E. O'Neill*) 16. Despite his nervous brooding he felt (*strong, strongly*) now, freed from a haze of illusions, ready to act. (*A. Cronin*) 17. How (*strong, strongly*) the jonquils smelled in the warm room. Too (*strong, strongly*)? Oh, no. (*K. Mansfield*)

*Exercise 3.* Make up as many sentences as possible using the material suggested below.

1. To look delicious, beautiful, different, marvellous, romantic, clean, nice, happy, miserable, awful, impressed, heroic, doubtful, thoughtful, good, bad, well, young, old. 2. To feel well (better), bad (worse), fine, good, happy, dazed, gloomy, awful, awkward, strange, ill, faint, puzzled, tired, frightened. 3. To sound dubious, genuine, weary, apologetic, angry, dreadful, cold, bad, good, wonderful, rude, jolly, odd, right, wrong, nice, mean, absurd, perfect, impossible, childish. 4. To taste bitter, delicious, sweet, sour. 5. To be (seem, appear) good, cheerful, unhappy, unexpected, natural, warm, great, terrible, shabby, bad, ingenious, sensible, childish, lonely, alive, delicate, thin, clever, successful, strange, simple.

*Exercise 4.* Complete and expand on the following sentences using several of the adjectives suggested below: *absurd, inviting, untidy, beautiful, old-fashioned, important, soft, nice, terrible, perfect, tired, sweet, good*. Develop the resulting sentences into short situations.

1. It may sound . . . 2. Your hair looks . . . 3. The pictures looked to me . . . 4. Don't you think those chairs look rather . . . 5. He was of the middle height, but with an ungainly figure that made him look . . . 6. George felt . . . 7. It certainly sounds very . . . 8. Silk feels . . . 9. She was a stout girl with short dark

hair that often looked . . . 10. She did not feel . . . 11. Peonies smell . . . 12. This jam tastes . . .

*Exercise 5.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Її слова звучали цілком щиро. 2. У тебе зовсім хворий вигляд! 3. Наречена виглядала дуже щасливою. 4. Це пояснення звучить досить переконливо. 5. Вона відчула себе погано і хутко вийшла з кімнати. 6. Ці ягоди виглядають стиглими, але вони дуже кислі на смак. 7. Конвалії чудово пахнуть, це мої улюблені квіти. 8. Вона випила стакан гарячої кави і одразу ж почула себе краще. 9. Її пропозиція здається мені зовсім абсурдною. 10. Мені дуже холодно. Можна зачинити вікно? 11. Сьогодні я відчуваю себе прекрасно. 12. У літньої вчительки був дуже втомлений вигляд. 13. Пасажир сердито глянув на свого сусіда, але нічого не сказав у відповідь. 14. Дівчина сумно подивилась на хворого і спробувала всміхнутися. 15. Він холодно глянув на співрозмовника. 16. Вечір був незвичайно тихий. 17. Роботу було виконано дуже майстерно. 18. Я рішуче проти її пропозиції. 19. Вона завжди розмовляє зо всіма дуже привітно і всім мило всміхається. 20. Зрозуміло, вона розсердилась на брата за запізнення. 21. Йти в гору було дуже важко. 22. Моя подруга чудово співає, її завжди приємно чути. 23. Хоча гості прийшли зненацька, господиня анітрохи не розгубилась і виглядала задоволеною. 24. У такий ситуації вона вчинила зовсім природньо. 25. В її голосі чулася щира радість.

### 13. PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS PART OF THE SUBJECT

#### EXAMPLES

1. "And our improvements," exclaimed Annixter. "Why, **Magnus and I** have put about five thousand dollars between us into that irrigating ditch already." (*Fr. Norris*) 2. You have no conception how desperately in love **Charlie and I** are with one another. (*W. S. Maugham*) 3. **Mother and I** both believe you — and we believe Tony. But you must make others believe you too. (*G. Gordon*) 4. **My parents and I** were the sole adherents of that reviled religion. (*A. Cronin*) 5. On the bench he had quitted **he and Angele** had often sat. (*Fr. Norris*) 6. It was that evening that **she and Ossie** had their first real quarrel. (*Ch. Dickens*)

7. Ossie dreamily wondered if one day **he and Doreen** would get married.  
(*Ch. Dickens*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. If the subject of a sentence comprises two or more components including the pronoun **I**, the latter occupies the final position.
2. If the subject of a sentence comprises two or more components including a personal pronoun (with the exception of **I**), the latter generally occupies the initial position.

### EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. He and Sonny were greeting each other like long-lost brothers. (*Ch. Dickens*)
2. Let's always be friends ... you and I. (*D. Robins*)
3. Your mother and I don't spend much, and we can manage without your help. (*E. Glasgow*)
4. Her marriage was highly successful. She and Andrew were a devoted couple and they were inordinately proud of their commonplace children. (*E. Glasgow*)
5. You see, you and I are the only people here who walk quite quietly and peaceably on solid ground. (*W. S. Maugham*)
6. It was father's idea that both he and mother should try to entertain the people who came to eat at our restaurant. (*Sh. Anderson*)
7. She and her husband, in overcoats and hats, were sitting under a string of washing on the porch. (*M. Dickens*)
8. Phil, if you want to, at any time, come and stay with us. We can always put you up. Dicky and I would love to have you. (*D. Robins*)
9. She and her brother had come to South Wales with him. (*A. Cronin*)
10. Neither Carolyn nor I liked deceiving you. (*D. Robins*)

*Exercise 2.* Complete and expand on the following sentences.

1. You and I . . .
2. My mother and I . . .
3. He and his wife . . .
4. My friend and I . . .
5. When you come back . . .
6. It was Mother's idea that she and her sister . . .
7. Ann invited several friends to her birthday party . . .
8. You and Mary . . .

*Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences into English.*

1. Ми з батьками жили раніше в маленькому містечку, що нараховувало близько двадцяти тисяч мешканців. 2. Ми з братом збираємося провести літо на Кавказі. 3. Як бачите, ми з вами цікавимося однією й тією ж проблемою. Кажуть, ви працюєте дуже завзято і багато встигли зробити. 4. Вони з дружиною повернулися тільки вчора. 5. Ані я, ані моя подруга не встигли прочитати цю книгу. 6. В нас з вами багато спільного, чи не правда? 7. Мартін Іден мріяв про той час, коли він і Рут зможуть одружитися. 8. Нам з вами треба обговорити одне важливе питання. 9. Ваша сестра зараз вдома? Ні, вона з дітьми поїхала за місто. 10. Ми з мамою дуже схожі один на одного. 11. Ми з нею зовсім різні люди. 12. Ендрю Менсон сказав: „Ми з Кристин будемо дуже раді бачити вас у себе”.

## 14. THE PRONOUN *WHO* IN COMPLEX SENTENCES

### EXAMPLES

1. A determined face. **A man who** knew what he wanted, who meant to get it. (*A. Christie*) 2. It is not **only people in books who** say that. (*Ch. Dickens*) 3. The guests streamed in, aunts, uncles, cousins, fat and thin, shy and jolly; pimply youths and **vague old men who** were steered about and told: "Not there, Grandpa!" **Children who** stared at the patients, and **Sonny's twin sisters, who** stared at them, too. (*M. Dickens*) 4. He had **a married daughter** in the other part of the town **who** was always on at him to tell her things. (*Ch. Dickens*) 5. **Mother, who** had not stirred from the house for days and **who** now at our evening meal was barely touching her food, pressed her hands together. (*A. Cronin*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTE

Never begin an attributive clause with the pronoun *which* if it modifies a common or proper noun (pronoun) denoting a human being.

## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. Then he turned inquiringly to the nurse, who appeared plain and competent and severely professional. (*E. Glasgow*) 2. "Of course, I knew you never loved me as much as I loved you," she moaned. "I'm afraid that's always the case," he said. "There's always one who loves and one who lets himself be loved." (*W. S. Maugham*) 3. He walked off to join some friends who were waiting for him. (*R. Ferguson*) 4. We hate beginners who think they know everything before they start. (*R. Ferguson*) 5. This was a man who had complete command of himself. (*A. Christie*) 6. You saw that here was a woman who knew her mind and was never afraid to speak it. (*W. S. Maugham*) 7. He felt that he was a deceiver, an impostor who had no right to be where he was. (*G. Gordon*)

*Exercise 2.* Complete and expand on the following sentences.

1. There are many people who . . . 2. I know a boy who . . . 3. Those students who . . . 4. It is rather funny when you think of all the people who . . . 5. He is a man who . . . 6. She was a woman who . . . 7. There were five children in the family, who . . . 8. We ought to be especially considerate to people who . . . 9. She smiled at the child who . . . 10. He is a born politician who . . . 11. She is the only person who . . . 12. He had the face of a man who . . .

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Люди, які ставлять перед собою певні задачі, завжди домагаються позитивних результатів. 2. Приємно мати справу з людьми, які не порушують обіцянок. 3. Я познайомилась вчора з однією людиною, яка нещодавно повернулася з Лондона і розповідала багато цікавого. 4. В кінці вулиці я побачила дівчину, яка бігла у напрямку до мене і відчайдушно махала рукою. 5. Тут нема нікого, хто б знав місто і його визначні місця краще, ніж директор місцевого музею. 6. Літня людина, яка тільки що була тут, — відомий художник, автор низки полотен на історичні теми. 7. Він нещодавно переїхав на нову квартиру і ще не знає людей, які живуть в квартирі навпроти. 8. Вчитель, який не любить свою професію, не може бути вихователем молодого покоління. 9. Ви не знайомі з жінкою, яка сидить в першому ряді? 10. Це була жінка, яка ніколи не зупинялась на

півдорозі в боротьбі за досягнення своєї мети. 11. Не люблю людей, які неуважні до оточуючих.

## 15. OBJECT CLAUSES BEGINNING WITH INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS OR ADVERBS

### EXAMPLES

1. Sitting up in bed he tried to hear **what his parents were saying**. (*G. Gordon*)
2. I don't think you realize **how angry Walter is**. (*W. S. Maugham*)
3. She could understand **why he was so popular at Hundt's bar**. (*G. Gordon*)
4. He didn't tell us **where he was going**. (*Ch. Dickens*)
5. He did not know what he was going to do. (*E. Hemingway*)
6. He asked **how long Anthony had been in Cape Town, where he had served his articles, how he liked his firm, what particular department he was handling, what he thought of the various magistrates he appeared before and how he had taken to the Cape Peninsula**. (*G. Gordon*)
7. I don't know **how we got out of that room**. (*A. Cronin*)
8. Tallis never seems to know **what he can manage and what he can't**. (*J. Murdoch*)
9. You'd better go up and find out **what she wants**. (*E. Glasgow*)

### EXPLANATORY NOTE

Ukrainian and Russian learners often build object clauses beginning with interrogative pronouns or adverbs by analogy with special questions. However, the difference in the structure of these sentences is quite distinct. Special questions are characterized by inversion (complete or partial) and, very frequently, by the use of the auxiliary verb *to do*, e.g. *Where do you live?* Object clauses are characterized neither by the use of the auxiliary verb *to do* nor, with a few exceptions, by inverted word order, e.g. *Now tell me where you live*. Caution: Remember to use partial inversion in object clauses beginning with *how* and containing a compound nominal predicate with an adjective in the function of the predicative, e.g. *You'll have to do more than talk about how good you are*. (*M. Wilson*)



## EXERCISES

*Exercise 1.* Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.

1. "It must be depressing never to get out." "Of course, it is depressing, but you know what the doctor says." (*E. Glasgow*) 2. She wondered why he was not a member of the club. (*H. Bates*) 3. Oh, you know what I mean. I didn't want to lose hope. (*W. S. Maugham*) 4. She did not know why he came to dances, he did not dance very well, and he seemed to know few people. (*W. S. Maugham*) 5. I didn't bother to ask her what she meant. (*Gr. Greene*) 6. Tell me what I can do for you. (*W. S. Maugham*) 7. "Never in my life," he said proudly. "I don't even know what it tastes like." (*M. Dickens*) 8. She wanted to have nothing more to do with him. She didn't see how he could prove anything. (*W. S. Maugham*) 9. She turned towards me and I saw how different she looked now. (*J. Murdoch*)

*Exercise 2.* Complete the following sentences using some of the phrases or verbs suggested below: *to be, to be going to do smth., to be going somewhere, to mean, to marry, to come, to keep, to say, to do, to sing*. Expand on the resulting sentences.

1. I knew what she . . . 2. He didn't know who . . . 3. I want to ask you if . . . 4. Andrew wondered why . . . 5. The noise of the storm was too loud for him to make out what . . . 6. I don't know why . . . 7. I feel better already but I don't know when . . . 8. Don't you see what . . . 9. I could sense the straining of the spectators behind me and heard what . . . 10. I don't understand why . . . 11. He took up the receiver and inquired if . . . 12. He asked me who . . . 13. Do you see where . . .

*Exercise 3.* Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я не знаю, коли він повернеться додому. Зателефонуйте, будь-ласка, ще раз. 2. Вона спитала, куди я поїду відпочивати влітку. 3. Ви вже вирішили, як назвете дитину? 4. Він не чув, про що ми розмовляли. 5. Я не зовсім розумію, що ви маєте на увазі. 6. Ви знаєте, де він зараз. 7. Ви не могли би мені пояснити, до кого я повинен звернутися? 8. Я довідаюсь, як це можна зробити. 9. Її останній вчинок засвідчив, наскільки вона легковажна. 10. Довідайтеся, будь-ласка, коли від'їжджає потяг. 11. Я не можу зрозуміти, чому запросили тільки мене. 12. Цікаво, що це таке.

## **SUPPLEMENT I**

### **СПИСОК НЕПРАВИЛЬНИХ ДІСЛІВ ЗА АЛФАВІТОМ**

|           |             |               |   |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|---|
| arise     | arose       | arisen        | виникати, з'являтися                    |
| awake     | awoke       | awoke/awoked  | прокидатися; будити, пробуджуватися     |
| be        | was, were   | been          | бути; бувати                            |
| bear      | bore        | borne/born    | носити; переносити, родити, народжувати |
| beat      | beat        | beaten        | бити                                    |
| become    | became      | become        | ставати; робитися; перетворюватися      |
| begin     | began       | begun         | починати(ся)                            |
| bet       | bet/betted  | bet/betted    | битися об заклад                        |
| bind      | bound       | bound         | зв'язувати                              |
| bite      | bit         | bitten        | кусатися                                |
| bleed     | bled        | bled          | кровоточити; проливати кров             |
| blow      | blew        | blown         | дути                                    |
| break     | broke       | broken        | ламати(ся); розбиватися                 |
| breed     | bred        | bred          | породжувати; розводити                  |
| bring     | brought     | brought       | приносити, проводити                    |
| broadcast | broadcast   | broadcast(ed) | передавати по радіо                     |
| build     | built       | built         | будувати, споруджувати                  |
| burn      | burn/burned | burnt/burned  | палити, спалювати                       |
| burst     | burst       | burst         | розривати, вибухати                     |
| buy       | bought      | bought        | купувати                                |
| cast      | cast        | cast          | кидати                                  |
| catch     | caught      | caught        | ловити                                  |
| choose    | chose       | chosen        | вибирати; відбирати                     |
| come      | came        | come          | приходити; приїжджати                   |
| cost      | cost        | cost          | коштувати                               |
| cut       | cut         | cut           | різати, розрізувати                     |
| dare      | dared       | dared         | сміти, наважуватися                     |
| deal      | dealt       | dealt         | мати справу; займатися                  |
| dig       | dug         | dug           | копати, рити                            |
| do        | did         | done          | робити, виконувати                      |
| draw      | drew        | drawn         | тягти; креслити                         |

|          |                         |                         |  |
|----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| dream    | dreamed/<br>dreamt      | dreamed/<br>dreamt      | бачити сон, мріяти, уявляти              |
| drink    | drank                   | drunk                   | пити                                     |
| drive    | drove                   | driven                  | водити, вести, правити                   |
| dwel     | dwelt                   | dwelt                   | жити, мешкати, перебувати                |
| eat      | ate                     | eaten                   | їсти                                     |
| fall     | fell                    | fallen                  | падати, опускати(ся)                     |
| feed     | fed                     | fed                     | годувати(ся), харчувати(ся)              |
| feel     | felt                    | felt                    | почувати, відчувати                      |
| fight    | fought                  | fought                  | битися, боротися                         |
| find     | found                   | found                   | знаходити; виявляти                      |
| fly      | flew                    | flown                   | літати                                   |
| forbid   | forbade/forbad          | forbidden               | забороняти                               |
| forecast | forecast/<br>forecasted | forecast/<br>forecasted | передбачати, завбачати                   |
| foresee  | foresaw                 | foreseen                | передбачати                              |
| forget   | forgot                  | forgotten               | забувати, забути                         |
| forgive  | forgave                 | forgiven                | прощати                                  |
| freeze   | froze                   | frozen                  | морозити, за- морозувати                 |
| get      | got                     | got<br>(US gotten)      | діставати, одержувати;<br>добиратися     |
| give     | gave                    | given                   | давати; віддавати                        |
| go       | went                    | gone                    | іти; їхати; їздити                       |
| grow     | grew                    | grown                   | рости; збільшуватися;<br>виросувати      |
| hang     | hung/hanged             | hung/hanged             | вішати, висіти                           |
| have     | had                     | had                     | мати                                     |
| hear     | heard                   | heard                   | чути; слухати, вислуховувати             |
| hide     | hid                     | hidden/hid              | ховати(ся)                               |
| hit      | hit                     | hit                     | ударяти                                  |
| hold     | held                    | held                    | тримати, держати                         |
| hurt     | hurt                    | hurt                    | завдавати болю; ушкодити;<br>поранити    |
| keep     | kept                    | kept                    | тримати; зберігати                       |
| kneel    | knelt                   | knelt                   | стояти навколішки; ставити<br>навколішки |
| knit     | knitted/knit            | knitted/knit            | в'язати; з'єднувати                      |
| know     | knew                    | known                   | знати                                    |
| lay      | laid                    | laid                    | класти; накривати                        |

|               |                |                |   |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|---|
| lead          | led            | led            | вести, приводити; керувати                      |
| lean          | leant/leaned   | leant/leaned   | нахиляти(ся)                                    |
| leap          | leapt/leaped   | leapt/leaped   | стрибати  |
| learn         | learnt/learned | learnt/learned | вчити, вивчати, вчитися                         |
| leave         | left           | left           | піти, поїхати, від'їжджати                      |
| lend          | lent           | lent           | позичати  |
| let           | let            | let            | пускати; випускати;<br>дозволяти; здавати внайм |
| lie           | lay            | lain           | лежати; перебувати                              |
| light         | lit/lighted    | lit/lighted    | запалювати, прикурити                           |
| lose          | lost           | lost           | втрачати; програвати                            |
| make          | made           | made           | робити, виробляти                               |
| mean          | meant          | meant          | означати  |
| meet          | met            | met            | зустрічати(ся); знайомитися                     |
| mislead       | misled         | misled         | вводити в оману                                 |
| misspell      | misspelt       | misspelt       | робити орфографічні помилки                     |
| misunderstand | misunderstood  | misunderstood  | неправильно розуміти                            |
| overcome      | overcame       | overcome       | перемогати, подолати                            |
| overhear      | overheard      | overheard      | підслуховувати                                  |
| partake       | partook        | partaken       | брати участь                                    |
| pay           | paid           | paid           | платити   |
| prove         | proved         | proven/proved  | доводити; виявлятися                            |
| put           | put            | put            | (по)класти, (по)ставити                         |
| read          | read           | read           | читати  |
| rebuild       | rebuilt        | rebuilt        | відбудовувати                                   |
| retell        | retold         | retold         | переказувати                                    |
| rewrite       | rewrote        | rewritten      | переписувати                                    |
| rid           | rid/ridden     | rid/ridden     | звільняти; позбавляти (чогось)                  |
| ride          | rode           | ridden         | їхати верхи; їхати                              |
| ring          | rang           | rung           | дзвеніти, дзвонити                              |
| rise          | rose           | risen          | сходити; вставати;<br>збільшуватися             |
| run           | run            | run            | бігати; керувати, управляти                     |
| say           | said           | said           | говорити, сказати, мовити                       |
| see           | saw            | seen           | бачити, дивитися                                |
| seek          | sought         | sought         | шукати, розшукувати                             |
| sell          | sold           | sold           | продавати, торгувати                            |
| send          | sent           | sent           | посилати  |
| set           | set            | set            | ставити; класти, розміщувати                    |

|         |                        |                        |   |
|---------|------------------------|------------------------|---|
| shake   | shook                  | shaken                 | трусити; струшувати, трястися                 |
| shed    | shed                   | shed                   | проливати (кров, сльози)                      |
| shine   | shone                  | shone                  | світити(ся), сяяти; блищати                   |
| shoot   | shot                   | shot                   | стріляти; убити                               |
| show    | showed                 | shown/showed           | показувати(ся), демонструвати                 |
| shut    | shut                   | shut                   | зачиняти(ся), закривати(ся)                   |
| sing    | sang                   | sung                   | співати                                       |
| sink    | sank                   | sunk/sunken            | тонути  |
| sit     | sat                    | sat                    | сидіти  |
| sleep   | slept                  | slept                  | спати   |
| slide   | slid                   | slid/slidden           | ковзати(ся); посковзнутися                    |
| smell   | smelt/smelled          | smelt/smelled          | відчувати запах; нюхати;<br>пахнути           |
| sow     | sowed                  | sown/sowed             | сіяти, засівати                               |
| speak   | spoke                  | spoken                 | говорити, розмовляти                          |
| speed   | sped/speeded           | sped/speeded           | поспішати, прискорювати                       |
| spell   | spelt/spelled          | spelt/spelled          | читати (писати, вимовляти)<br>слово по буквах |
| spend   | spent                  | spent                  | витрачати; проводити                          |
| spill   | spilt/spilled          | spilt/spilled          | розливати(ся), розсипати(ся)                  |
| spin    | spun/span              | spun                   | прясти, плести                                |
| split   | split                  | split                  | розколювати(ся),<br>розщеплювати(ся)          |
| spoil   | spoilt/spoiled         | spoilt/spoiled         | псувати(ся)                                   |
| spread  | spread                 | spread                 | поширювати(ся); простягатися                  |
| spring  | sprang                 | sprung                 | стрибати                                      |
| stand   | stood                  | stood                  | стояти  |
| steal   | stole                  | stolen                 | красти  |
| stick   | stuck                  | stuck                  | триматися, додержуватися                      |
| sting   | stung                  | stung                  | жалити, уражати                               |
| stride  | strode                 | stridden/strid         | широко ступати, крокувати                     |
| strike  | struck                 | struck/stricken        | бити, страйкувати                             |
| string  | strung                 | strung                 | зав'язувати, натягувати                       |
| strive  | strove                 | striven                | старатися, намагатися                         |
| sunburn | sunburnt/<br>sunburned | sunburnt/<br>sunburned | загорати                                      |
| sweep   | swept                  | swept                  | підмітати, чистити                            |
| swim    | swam                   | swum                   | плавати, пливти                               |
| swing   | swung                  | swung                  | коливати(ся), хитати(ся)                      |

|            |              |              |                                  |
|------------|--------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| take       | took         | taken        | брати; взяти                     |
| teach      | taught       | taught       | вчити, навчати                   |
| tear       | tore         | torn         | рвати(ся), відривати(ся)         |
| tell       | told         | told         | розповідати; говорити; казати    |
| think      | thought      | thought      | думати, обмірковувати            |
| throw      | threw        | thrown       | кидати                           |
| undergo    | underwent    | undergone    | зазнавати                        |
| understand | understood   | understood   | розуміти                         |
| undertake  | undertook    | undertaken   | починати, братися                |
| undo       | undid        | undone       | розв'язувати; розстибати         |
| upset      | upset        | upset        | засмучувати                      |
| wake       | woke/waked   | woken/waked  | прокидатися, будити              |
| wear       | wore         | worn         | носити (одяг)                    |
| weep       | wept         | wept         | плакати                          |
| win        | won          | won          | вигравати; перемагати            |
| wind       | wound/winded | wound/winded | крутити(ся); заводити (годинник) |
| withdraw   | withdrew     | withdrawn    | відкликати, виводити             |
| write      | wrote        | written      | писати                           |

## SUPPLEMENT II

### ЧИТАННЯ НАЙБІЛЬШ УЖИВАНИХ МАТЕМАТИЧНИХ ПОЗНАЧЕНЬ

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| $a \geq b$                         | <b>a</b> is much greater than <b>b</b>   |
| $a \leq b$                         | <b>a</b> is much less than <b>b</b>  |
| $a \approx b$                      | <b>a</b> is approximately equal to <b>b</b>  |
| $a_b$                              | <b>a</b> sub <b>b</b> ; <b>a</b> subscript <b>b</b>                                |
| $a + b$                            | <b>a</b> plus <b>b</b>   |
| $a - b$                            | <b>a</b> minus <b>b</b>  |
| $a * b$                            | <b>a</b> times <b>b</b> ; <b>a</b> multiplied by <b>b</b>                          |
| $a : b$                            | <b>a</b> divided by <b>b</b>   |
| $\frac{a}{b}$                      | <b>a</b> over <b>b</b>   |
| $\frac{ab}{cd}$                    | <b>a</b> times <b>b</b> over <b>c</b> times <b>d</b>                               |
| [a]                                | <b>a</b> in brackets   |
| (a)                                | <b>a</b> in parentheses  |
| dx                                 | differential of <b>x</b>   |
| $\int$                             | Integral   |
| $\iint$                            | double integral  |
| $10^2$                             | ten to the second [power]; ten squared   |
| $10^{-1}$                          | ten to the minus first [power]   |
| $10^3$                             | ten to the third [power]; ten cubed  |
| $\left( \frac{x^2}{y^3} \right)^m$ | <b>x</b> squared divided by <b>y</b> cubed in parentheses to the $m_{th}$ [power]  |
| $\sqrt{a}$                         | square root of <b>a</b>  |
| $\sqrt[3]{a}$                      | third (cube) root of <b>a</b>  |
| $\ln x$                            | natural logarithm of <b>x</b>  |
| $\log x$                           | [common] logarithm of <b>x</b>   |
| $\log^2_{10} = 0,30103$            | logarithm of two to the base ten is nought point three, nought, one, nought, three |

## ЛІТЕРАТУРА

1. Барановская Т. В. Грамматика английского языка. Сборник упражнений: Учебное пособие. Издание второе, исправленное и дополненное. Киев: ООО “ИП Логос”, 2004. 384 с.
2. Верба Г. В., Верба Л. Г. Довідник з граматики англійської мови: Довідкове видання. 3-тє видання. К.: Освіта, 1993. 320 с.
3. Викулова Е.А. Практическое пособие по грамматике английского языка (для научных работников, аспирантов и соискателей). Екатеринбург: УрО РАН, 2007. 101с.
4. Голицинский Ю. Б. Грамматика английского языка. Сборник упражнений. СПб.: „КАРО”, 2005. 544 с.
5. Деева И. М. Лексико-грамматические трудности английского языка. Учеб. Пособие для студентов III – IV курсов ин-тов и факультетов иностр. яз. Л., «Просвещение», 1976. 240 с.
6. Жималенкова Т. М., Мыльцева Н. А. Универсальный справочник по грамматике английского языка. М.: «Глосса», 1995. 235 с.
7. Зайковскі С. А. Адамовська Л. М. Сторінками англійської граматики. Збірник граматичних вправ. Морфологія. Тернопіль: Навчальна книга – Богдан, 2000. 144с.
8. Качалова К. Н., Израилевич Е. Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями и ключами. М., 1997. 305 с.
9. Мишанина Г. Г. Английский язык: учебное пособие для студентов Волгоградского государственного экономико-технического колледжа. – Волгоград: ВГЭТК, 2007. 168 с.
10. П’янова І. Ю., Шотова-Ніколенко Г. В. Методичні вказівки з граматики англійської мови для студентів I, II курсу денної форми навчання. Напрямок підготовки — усі напрямки. Одеса: ОДЕКУ, 2009. 82 с.
11. П’янова І. Ю., Шаблій О. В. Навчальний посібник з англійської мови. Напрямок підготовки – „Комп’ютерні науки”. Одеса: ОГМІ, 2000. 134с.
12. Полякова Т. Ю. Английский язык для диалога с компьютером. М.: „Высшая школа”, 2002. 226 с.
13. Шотова-Ніколенко Г. В. Методичні вказівки для СРС та навчальний матеріал з англійської мови для студентів II курсу IV семестру денної форми навчання. Напрямок підготовки — „Комп’ютерні науки”. Одеса: „Друкарський дім”, 2009. 60 с.
14. Galperin I. R. New English-Russian Dictionary. M., 1972.
15. Hornby A. S. The Advanced Learner’s Dictionary of Current English. L., 1967.
16. Owen G. A. Dictionary of “Confusibles”. Bath, Somerset, 1966.



*Навчальне видання*

**ШОТОВА-НІКОЛЕНКО ГАННА ВАСИЛІВНА**

**НАВЧАЛЬНИЙ ПОСІБНИК  
З ГРАМАТИКИ АНГЛІЙСЬКОЇ МОВИ**

для студентів-магістрів I курсу  
I, II семестрів  
денної форми навчання  
Усі спеціальності

*Англійською та українською мовами*